docomo STYLE series
P-02A

ISSUE DATE: '09.1

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

docomo

DOCOMO W-CDMA・GSM/GPRS System

Thank you for selecting the "docomo STYLE series P-02A".
Before or during use of the P-02A, make sure that you read this manual and the separate manuals for other optional devices thoroughly so that you can use the P-02A correctly.
If you feel any inconvenience in reading the manual, contact the docomo Information Center listed on the back page of this manual.
The P-02A is designed to be your close partner. Treat it carefully at all times to ensure long-term performance.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- Because the FOMA terminals use radio waves, they cannot be used in places where radio waves do not reach, such as inside tunnels, underground, or in buildings; or the outside where radio waves are weak or out of the FOMA service area. They may not be used in the high-rise buildings even when the antennas are unobstructed. You may also experience interruption of calls even when using without moving while the radio waves are strong enough for the three antennas to appear on the display.
- Use the FOMA terminal carefully to avoid disturbing other people when in public, or in crowded or quiet places.
- Since the FOMA terminals use radio waves as the medium of telecommunication, calls may be tapped by the third party.
However, the W-CDMA・GSM/GPRS system automatically supports tapping prevention, so your conversation will be incomprehensible to the third party, because it is recognized as mere noise.
- The FOMA terminals change your voice into digital signals and send them to the other party. In places where the radio waves are weak, the digital signals may not be converted correctly, and in such a case, the voice may sound different from the actual original voice.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DOCOMO nor the certifiers as listed herein make any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DOCOMO nor the certifiers shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
Certifiers: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd., and Comodo CA Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA High-Speed Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and in DOCOMO's roaming area.

- It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information (such as Phonebook entries, schedule events, text memos, record messages, voice memos, movie memos) stored in the FOMA terminal and keep them in a safe place. Note that we cannot be held responsible for the unlikely event of loss of the stored contents due to a malfunction, repair, change of your model, or other mishandling of the FOMA terminal.
- You are advised to save your important data files to the microSD card. If you have a personal computer, you can transfer and save the information such as Phonebook entries, mail messages, schedule events, and others to the personal computer by using DOCOMO keitai datalink.

For Using This Manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (page 116).
If you use Kisekae Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.

You can download the latest information about this manual from the following DOCOMO website:
・User's Manual (PDF file) Download
  (http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html)
※The URL and the content of the website might be modified without notice.

Viewing/Searching This Manual

In this manual, illustrations and symbols are used in the explanations so that you can correctly and easily use the FOMA terminal.

- The most operating procedures and displays in this manual are described with the default settings of the "Diamond Black" handset (see page 476). However, the following settings are changed.
  - "Display setting" → "Stand-by display": OFF
  - "Display setting" → "Clock" → "Stand-by clock" → "Position": Pattern 1
  - "Color theme setting": White
  - "Disp. call/receive No." → "Font color": Black
- Displays and illustrations described in this manual are for reference. The actual ones might differ.
- In this manual, "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli which supports the IC card function" is described as "Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli".
- Note that "P-02A" is referred to as "FOMA terminal" in this manual.
- In the operating procedures of this manual, key operations are described with simplified key icons.
- The functions which use a microSD card are described in this manual; however, you need to obtain a microSD card separately to make these functions available. See page 368 for the microSD card.

How to Refer to This Manual

By the following search methods, you can find pages where your desired functions and services are described:

From the Index

Search from the index when you know the names of functions or services.

From Easy Search

Search from keywords for the functions you frequently use or the functions that are convenient if you can know any.

From the Tabs on the Cover

Search from the tabs printed on the cover.

See the next page for details.

From the Contents   ▶▶P.6

Search from the contents that categorize functions.

From the Main Functions   ▶▶P.8

Search from here to use the main functions.

From the Function List   ▶▶P.476

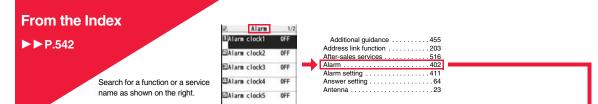Search from the function list.

From Quick Manual   ▶▶P.550

Quick Manual gives you a clear, brief description about basic functions. You can take it when you go out. Further, Quick Manual "For Overseas Use" is attached, so refer to it when you use the FOMA terminal overseas.

How to search for "Alarm" is explained here as an example of search method.

From the Index

►►P.542

Search for a function or a service name as shown on the right.

Alarm	1/2
①Alarm clock1	OFF
②Alarm clock2	OFF
③Alarm clock3	OFF
④Alarm clock4	OFF
⑤Alarm clock5	OFF

From Easy Search

►►P.4

Search for the function you frequently use or that is convenient if you know any as shown on the right.

Other things you can do
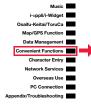
Go to page 404 where "Alarm" is explained.
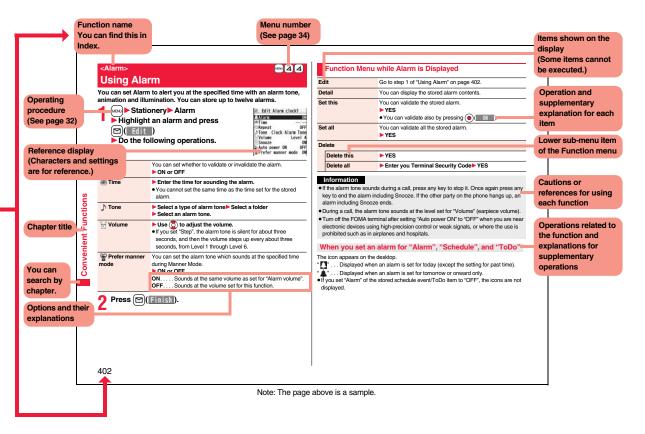
From the Tabs on the Cover

►►Cover page

Search for the function you want to set in the order of "Cover" → "First page of Chapter" → "Description page" as shown on the right.

Music ■
i-αppli/i-Widget ■
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa ■
Map/GPS Function ■
Data Management ■
Convenient Functions ■
Character Entry ■
Network Services ■
Overseas Use ■
PC Connection ■
Appendix/Troubleshooting ■

Function name
You can find this in Index.

Menu number
(See page 34)

Items shown on the display
(Some items cannot be executed.)

Operating procedure
(See page 32)

Operation and supplementary explanation for each item

Reference display
(Characters and settings are for reference.)

Lower sub-menu item of the Function menu

Chapter title

Cautions or references for using each function

You can search by chapter.

Operations related to the function and explanations for supplementary operations

Options and their explanations

<Alarm> — MENU 4 4

Using Alarm

You can set Alarm to alert you at the specified time with an alarm tone, animation and illumination. You can store up to twelve alarms.

1 MENU ▶ Stationery ▶ Alarm
▶ Highlight an alarm and press ⊠ (Edit)
▶ Do the following operations.

Edit Alarm clock1
Alarm   ON
Time   --:--
Repeat   OFF
Tone Clock Alarm Tone
Volume   Level 4
Snooze   ON
Auto power ON   OFF
Prefer manner mode ON

Alarm	You can set whether to validate or invalidate the alarm. ▶ ON or OFF	
Time	▶ Enter the time for sounding the alarm. ● You cannot set the same time as the time set for the stored alarm.	
Tone	▶ Select a type of alarm tone ▶ Select a folder ▶ Select an alarm tone.	
Volume	▶ Use ○ to adjust the volume. ● If you set "Step", the alarm tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every about three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.	
Prefer manner mode	You can set the alarm tone which sounds at the specified time during Manner Mode. ▶ ON or OFF ON . . . . . Sounds at the same volume as set for "Alarm volume". OFF . . . . Sounds at the volume set for this function.	

2 Press ⊠ (Finish).

Convenient Functions

402

Function Menu while Alarm is Displayed

Edit	Go to step 1 of "Using Alarm" on page 402.
Detail	You can display the stored alarm contents.
Set this	You can validate the stored alarm. ▶ YES ● You can validate also by pressing ● (ON).
Set all	You can validate all the stored alarm. ▶ YES
Delete	
Delete this	▶ YES
Delete all	▶ Enter you Terminal Security Code ▶ YES

Information
● If the alarm tone sounds during a call, press any key to stop it. Once again press any key to end the alarm including Snooze. If the other party on the phone hangs up, an alarm including Snooze ends.
● During a call, the alarm tone sounds at the level set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
● Turn off the FOMA terminal after setting "Auto power ON" to "OFF" when you are near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals, or where the use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.

When you set an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", and "ToDo"
The icon appears on the desktop.
" 🔔 " . . . Displayed when an alarm is set for today (except the setting for past time).
" 🔔 " . . . Displayed when an alarm is set for tomorrow or onward only.
● If you set "Alarm" of the stored schedule event/ToDo item to "OFF", the icons are not displayed.

Note: The page above is a sample.

Easy Search

To retrieve a desired function with simple words, refer to the following:

To use the FOMA terminal with a sense of security

※1 This is a pay service.
※2 This is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

To make full use of 1Seg

Other things you can do

●The operating procedures for frequently used functions are summarized in Quick Manual. (See page 550)

Contents

Section	Contents
Before Using the Handset 21	Part Names and Functions, Display, Desktop Icon, Selecting Menu, Guide, UIM (FOMA Card), Battery, Charging, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Set Time, World Time Watch, Caller ID Notification, Own Number, etc.
Voice/ Videophone Calls/ PushTalk 47	Making a Call/Videophone Call, Call Records, Chaku-moji, Receiving a Call/Videophone Call, Volume, Ring Volume, Public Mode, Record Message Setting, Chara-den, Making a PushTalk Call, Receiving a PushTalk Call, PushTalk Phonebook, etc.
Phonebook 87	Available Phonebooks, Add to Phonebook (FOMA terminal/UIM), Group Setting, Search Phonebook, Edit Phonebook, Delete Data, No. of Phonebook, 2-touch Dial, Voice Dial
Sound/Screen/ Light Settings 103	Select Ring Tone, Vibrator, Manner Mode, Speed Selector Sound, Display Setting, Backlight, Menu Icon Setting, Kisekae Tool, Set to Machi-chara, Illumination, Font, etc.
Security Settings 121	Security Codes, Change Security Code, Releasing PIN Lock, Lock All, Omakase Lock, Self Mode, Personal Data Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Call Setting without ID, Reject Unknown, Reset Settings, Initialize, etc.
Mail 141	i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Decome-Anime, Template, Attachments, Mail Auto-receive, Receive Option, Check New Messages, Message R/F, Early Warning "Area Mail", Chat Mail, SMS, Web Mail, etc.
i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel/i-concier 189	i-mode, ⅰ Menu, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Enter URL, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Download, Upload, Certificate, i-motion, i-Channel, i-concier, etc.
Full Browser/ PC Movie 215	Full Browser, Full Browser Settings, PC Movie, Downloading PC Movies, PC Movie Player
Camera 229	Before Using Camera, Still Image Shoot, Movie Shoot, Settings for Shooting, Setting Image Size/Image Quality, Bar Code Reader
1Seg 249	1Seg, Before Using 1Seg, Channel Setting, Activate 1Seg, i-αppli Program Guide, Data Broadcasting, TVlink, Recording 1Seg, TV Timer/Timer Recording, User Settings
Music 269	Music&Video Channel, Set Program, Playing/Operating Programs, Playing Music, Saving Music Files, MUSIC Player, Playlist

Main Functions of P-02A

◆i-concier ▶▶P.211

i-concier is a service that enables you to receive useful information from a character (Machi-chara image) on the Stand-by display and download schedule event (i-schedule) files for your convenience.

Downloaded i-schedule events or ToruCa files are automatically updated to the latest information, and the address information of shops/companies, etc. is automatically added to the Phonebook.

◆i-αppli Call ▶▶P.306

i-αppli call is a useful function for online games that enables your content provider or third party to give notice to your opponent to start the specified corresponding application.

◆International Roaming ▶▶P.296, P.460

Your FOMA terminal, phone number, and mail address are available overseas (3G/GSM areas are supported).

Further, "日英版／日中版　しゃべって翻訳 for P (J-E/J-C Speech Translation for P)", which translates words into English or Chinese if you talk in Japanese, and into Japanese if in English or Chinese, is pre-installed.

◆i-Widget ▶▶P.309

i-Widget is a useful function that enables you to easily access the tools and commonly-used contents (Widget αppli) such as a calculator, clock, TV program list, and stock prices information.

By launching the i-Widget display, you can check your desired latest information at a glance.

◆1Seg ▶▶P.250

You can watch 1Seg programs of the terrestrial digital broadcasting for mobile objects. Also, you can record a still image or video while watching a 1Seg program.

◆Bluetooth Function ▶▶P.421

The wirelessly-connected FOMA terminal and a Bluetooth device enable you to talk or listen to music while you are carrying the FOMA terminal in your bag.

◆Full Wide VGA Display

You can display still images or movies in the Full Wide VGA (480 dots x 854 dots) display of approx. 3.1 inches and can enjoy watching 1Seg programs on the impressive display.

Moreover, you can use the side key to shoot still images and movies with horizontal wide display just like using a digital camera.

Also, the light sensor automatically adjusts the backlight in accordance with the ambient brightness, and the LCD AI compensates the image quality in accordance with the brightness.

◆Feel＊Mail ▶▶P.177

Animation of 45 characters and illumination reproduce the atmosphere of mail messages. Pleasant animation appears and illumination lights according to the contents of mail message.

◆Recv. Mail/Call at Open ▶▶P.113

When a missed call or new mail message is found, just open the FOMA terminal to display the detailed Missed Call display or the Inbox list.

◆**Speed Selector** ▶▶**P.25**

By the rotating operation, you can scroll displays and select items quickly. Further, in various situation, you can comfortably operate functions such as volume adjustment during music playback or during a call, and zoom adjustment for when shooting with the camera.

◆**Swing Slide** ▶▶**P.24**

When you slide to open, the display slightly comes up to your side, so it is easy to see and you feel the naturally-angled touch when putting it on your face during a call.

◆**View Blind** ▶▶**P.115**

You can make the display hard to see from an angle. You can use the FOMA terminal without concern for others' eyes.

◆**Shikkari Talk** ▶▶**P.61**

You can make the other party's voice clear according to surrounding noise.

◆**Yuttari Talk** ▶▶**P.61**

You can slow down the other party's speaking speed during a call.

◆**Face Detection** ▶▶**P.239**

You can shoot still images adjusting the camera focus on person's face automatically.

◆**Document Viewer** ▶▶**P.393**

On your FOMA terminal, you can display Microsoft Word files, Microsoft Excel files, and Microsoft PowerPoint files created by personal computers.

◆**Voice Recorder** ▶▶**P.388**

You can record your voice as a substitute for taking notes. You can repeatedly play it back, so it is convenient to record the proceedings at a meeting, etc.

◆**Chaku-moji** ▶▶**P.54**
◆**Videophone** ▶▶**P.48**
◆**i-mode mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram** ▶▶**P.142, P.146, P.342**
◆**i-αppli/Mega i-αppli/Intuitive Games** ▶▶**P.290**
◆**High-Speed Communication Supported** ▶▶**P.470**
◆**Chaku-uta Full®/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel/Video Clips** ▶▶**P.208, P.270, P.276, P.278**
  ●"Chaku-uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
◆**MUSIC Player** ▶▶**P.278**
◆**GPS** ▶▶**P.326**
◆**Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa** ▶▶**P.314, P.316**
◆**Kisekae Tool** ▶▶**P.116, P.367**
◆**Respective Network Services** ▶▶**P.439**
◆**Security Settings** ▶▶**P.121**

Precautions   ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

■**Before using the FOMA terminal, read these safety precautions carefully so that you can use it correctly.**
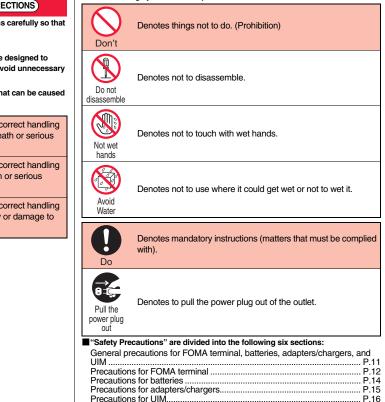
After reading the precautions, keep them in a safe place.

■**Be sure to observe these safety precautions because they are designed to protect you or those around you from causing injury and to avoid unnecessary damage to the property.**

■**The symbols below indicate the levels of danger or damage that can be caused if the particular precautions are not observed.**

⚠ **Danger**	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling will almost certainly cause death or serious injury.
⚠ **Warning**	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing death or serious injury.
⚠ **Caution**	This symbol indicates that incorrect handling poses a risk of causing injury or damage to the product or property.

■**The following symbols show specific directions:**

🚫 Don't	Denotes things not to do. (Prohibition)
Do not disassemble	Denotes not to disassemble.
Not wet hands	Denotes not to touch with wet hands.
Avoid Water	Denotes not to use where it could get wet or not to wet it.

❗ Do	Denotes mandatory instructions (matters that must be complied with).
Pull the power plug out	Denotes to pull the power plug out of the outlet.

■**"Safety Precautions" are divided into the following six sections:**

10

General precautions for FOMA terminal, batteries, adapters/chargers, and UIM

⚠️ **Danger**

🚫 Don't

Do not use, store or leave the FOMA terminal and its accessories in places with a high temperature such as near fire or places exposed to direct sunlight, or in cars under the blazing sun.
The devices could be deformed or malfunction, or the battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire, thus resulting in the deterioration of performance and shortening of the life of devices.
Also, part of the case could get heated, causing bare skin burns.

🚫 Do not disassemble

Do not disassemble, modify or solder the FOMA terminal or accessories.
Accidents such as fire, injury, or electric shock, or malfunction may result. The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.

🚫 Avoid Water

Do not wet the FOMA terminal or accessories.
If liquids such as water or pet urine get onto them, overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury or others may result. Pay attention to the place of use and the way of handling.

❗ Do

With your FOMA terminal, use the batteries and adapters/chargers specified by NTT DOCOMO, INC.
If you use any type of battery, adapter or charger other than the specified one, your FOMA terminal, battery or other accessories may leak, overheat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.
Battery Pack P19
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
Desktop Holder P29
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
※For other compatible products, contact a handling counter such as a docomo shop.

⚠️ **Warning**

🚫 Don't

Do not place the batteries, the FOMA terminal, adapters/chargers, or UIM in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or high-pressure containers.
The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. The FOMA terminal or the adapter/charger may overheat, smoke, or catch fire, or its circuit parts may become damaged.

🚫 Don't

Do not throw the FOMA terminal or accessories, or subject them to severe shocks.
The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.

🚫 Don't

Be careful not to let electroconductive materials (metal pieces, pencil leads etc.) contact with the charging terminal or connector terminal. Also, make sure that those are not entered into the inside of the FOMA terminal.
Short-circuit could cause fire or malfunction of the FOMA terminal.

❗ Do

When you are in a place such as a gas station where flammable gas is generated, turn off the FOMA terminal, and never do charging. Otherwise, catching fire may result.
Ensure that you use Osaifu-Keitai with the FOMA terminal turned off when you are in the vicinity of the gas station. (When IC Card Lock is set, turn off the power with the lock released.)

❗ Do

If odor, overheat, discoloration, or deformation is detected during use, battery charge, or storage, immediately observe the following:
1. Pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the power to the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.
If you use the FOMA terminal and its accessories as they are, overheat, burst, or catching fire could result or the battery could leak.

11

Caution

Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal or accessories on unstable locations such as wobbly tables or slanted locations.
The FOMA terminal or accessories may fall, resulting in injury or malfunction.

Don't

Do not store in humid or dusty places, or in high temperature environments.
Malfunction may result.

Do

If children use the FOMA terminal or accessories, a guardian should explain the safety precautions and correct operations. The guardian should also make sure that the instructions are followed during use.
Otherwise, injury may result.

Do

Keep out of the reach of babies and infants.
Accidental swallowing or injury may result.

Do

Be especially careful when you use the FOMA terminal for a long time with the adapter/charger connected.
If you use i-αppli programs, talk on the videophone, watch 1Seg programs and so on for a long time during charging, the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack, or adapter/charger might rise.
If you directly touch the part of high temperature continuously, redness, itching, rash, or low-temperature bare skin burns may result depending on your physical conditions or predisposition.

Precautions for FOMA terminal

Warning

Don't

Do not directly point the infrared data port at someone's eyes during transmission.
His/her eyes may possibly be affected. Other infrared devices may operate erroneously if the infrared data port is pointed at them during transmission.

Don't

Do not shine the photo light close to eyes.
Doing so can damage eyesight. Also, accidents such as injury might occur if someone is startled or dazzled by the light.

Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal in the place where it could be affected by an expanded airbag, e.g., on the dashboard.
If the airbag expands, the FOMA terminal could hit you and others, causing accidents such as injury and the FOMA terminal could malfunction and become damaged.

Don't

If you have any implanted electronic medical equipment, do not place your FOMA terminal in a chest pocket or inner pocket.
If the FOMA terminal is positioned close to electronic medical equipment, it may cause that equipment to malfunction.

Don't

Do not allow liquids such as water, or foreign materials such as metal pieces or flammable materials to get into the UIM or microSD card slot of the FOMA terminal.
Fire, electric shock or malfunction may result.

Don't

Do not turn on the photo light to drivers of cars, and others.
It disturbs driving, and accidents may result.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in places where use is prohibited such as in airplanes and hospitals.
Otherwise, electronic devices and electronic medical appliances may be adversely affected. If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.
For use inside medical facilities, make sure that you comply with their regulations. You may be punished for using the FOMA terminal in airplanes, which is prohibited by law.

Do

When talking with the FOMA terminal set to Hands-free, be sure to keep the FOMA terminal away from your ear.
Further, when you play games or play back music with the earphone/microphone connected, adjust the sound volume to moderate volume.
The excessive sound volume impairs your hearing.
Further, accidents may result due to the hardness of hearing of surrounding sound.

12

Do

For those with weak heart conditions, the vibrator and ring volume must be adjusted carefully.
Those functions may cause an effect on the heart.

Do

If thunder starts to rumble while you are using the FOMA terminal outdoors, house the antenna, turn off the power and move to a safe place.
Otherwise, you could be struck by lightning or suffer an electric shock.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal when near electronic devices using high-precision control or weak signals.
The FOMA terminal may possibly cause these devices to malfunction.
※Electronic devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices. If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted defibrillator or any other electronic medical device, consult the manufacturer or retailer of the device for advice regarding possible effects from the radio waves.

Do

If the display part or camera lens is broken, be careful about broken glasses or the exposed interior of the FOMA terminal.
Plastic panels are used for the surfaces of the display part and camera lens so that glasses do not easily get scattered, however, pay attention not to erroneously touch the broken part or interior. Otherwise, injury may result.

⚠ Caution

Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its antenna or strap.
The FOMA terminal may hit you or persons around you, and accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.

Don't

Do not use in places crowded with people.
The antenna may hit against others, causing an accident such as injury.

Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal with the damaged antenna.
If the damaged antenna comes in contact with your skin, an accident such as a burn or injury could be caused.

Don't

When using the motion tracking, ensure that you check around you for safety, securely take hold of your FOMA terminal, and do not swing to an extent more than necessitated.
The motion tracking is the function to incline or swing the FOMA terminal for operation. If you excessively swing your FOMA terminal, it might happen that it hits against persons or objects, resulting in critical accidents or damage.

Don't

When a metallic strap is attached to your FOMA terminal, be careful that it does not hit against persons or objects when using the motion tracking.
Accidents such as injury or malfunction and damage may result.

Don't

Do not place magnetic cards or similar objects near the FOMA terminal.
Magnetic data on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be deleted.

Don't

Do not bring magnetic substances close to your FOMA terminal.
Strong magnetic items might cause in erroneous operation.

Don't

**If you erroneously break the display part and then crystal liquid gets leaked, never take or suck the liquid to or into your mouth, or apply to skin.
If the crystal liquid gets into the eyes or mouth, immediately rinse it out with clean water and then seek medical attention.
When it adheres to your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it away with alcohol etc., and then rinse it out with water and soap.**
Otherwise, the loss of eyesight or injury to your skin may result.

Don't

Do not bring your ears close to the speakers while a ring tone sounds or a melody is played back from the FOMA terminal.
Otherwise, your hearing could be impaired.

Do **Electronic devices in some types of cars can be affected by use of the FOMA terminal.**
For safety's sake, make sure not to use the FOMA terminal inside such cars.

Do **Itching, rash or eczema may be caused depending on your physical conditions or predisposition. If an abnormality occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately, and then seek medical attention.**

Metals are used for the following parts:

Where it is used		Material	Finishing
Charging terminal		Phosphor bronze	Gold-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
Slide rail		SUS304	Fluorine coating
Metal part of the 1Seg antenna	Top	Brass	Tin-and-cobalt-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
	Middle	SUS304	—
	Hinge at bottom part	SUS304	Tin-and-cobalt-plated finish with nickel-plated ground
	Screw at bottom part	Brass	Nickel-plated
Recording/PushTalk key		ABS	Chrome-plated finish with copper-and-nickel-plated ground

Do **Be careful not to get your finger or a strap caught in the parts when you close or open the FOMA terminal.**
Accidents such as injury or damage may result.

Do **When you watch a 1Seg program, watch in a place bright enough taking a certain distance from the display.**
Otherwise, your visual acuity could be reduced.

Precautions for batteries

■**Check the description on the label of the battery pack for the type of battery.**

Description	Type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion battery

⚠ Danger

Don't **Do not let any metal object such as a wire come in contact the battery terminals. Also do not carry or store the battery together with any metal objects like a necklace.**
The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.

Don't **Do not use excessive force to attach the battery to the FOMA terminal even when you cannot attach it successfully. Also, check that the battery is the right way round when you attach it.**
The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.

Don't **Do not throw the battery into fire.**
The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.
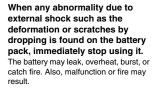
Don't **Do not pierce it with nails, hit it with a hammer, or step on it.**
The battery may leak, overheat, burst or catch fire.

Do **If the battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.**
Otherwise, the loss of eyesight may result.

⚠ Warning

Don't **When any abnormality due to external shock such as the deformation or scratches by dropping is found on the battery pack, immediately stop using it.**
The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.

Do **If charging is not completed at the end of the specified charging time, stop charging.**
Otherwise, the battery may leak, overheat, become damaged or catch fire.

Do **Immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and keep it away from fire if the battery leaks or emits an odor.**
The leaked battery fluid may ignite, causing fire or burst.

Do **Be careful that your pets do not bite into the battery pack.**
The battery may leak, overheat, burst, or catch fire. Also, malfunction or fire may result.

Caution

An exhausted battery should not be disposed of with other waste.
Don't
The battery may catch fire or damage the environment. After insulating the battery terminals with tape, take the unneeded battery to a handling counter such as a docomo shop or dispose of it in accordance with local waste disposal regulations.

Do not charge the wet battery.
Don't
The battery pack may overheat, catch fire, or burst.

If the battery fluid comes in contact with skin or clothes, immediately stop using, then rinse it out thoroughly with clean water.
Do
Skin injury may result.

Precautions for adapters/chargers

Warning

Do not use a damaged adapter/charger cord or power cord.
Don't
Electric shock, overheating or fire may result.
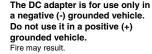
Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in steamy places such as a bathroom.
Don't
Electric shock may occur.

The DC adapter is for use only in a negative (-) grounded vehicle. Do not use it in a positive (+) grounded vehicle.
Don't
Fire may result.

If it starts to thunder, do not touch the FOMA terminal and adapter/charger.
Don't
You might be struck by lighting or suffer an electric shock.

Never short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter is plugged into the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, never touch the charging terminal with fingers or other bare skin.
Don't
Fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury may result.

Place the charger and desktop holder on a stable location during charging. Do not cover or wrap the charger and desktop holder in cloth or bedding.
Don't
The FOMA terminal may drop off, or the charger and desktop holder may overheat, causing fire or malfunction.

Do not place something heavy on the adapter/charger cord and power cord.
Don't
Electric shock or fire may result.

Do not touch the power cord of the adapter/charger, or power outlet with wet hands.
Not wet hands
Electric shock may result.

Use the adapter/charger at the specified V AC.
Do
If you use it at a wrong voltage, fire or malfunction may result. When using the FOMA terminal overseas, use FOMA AC adapter available overseas.
AC adapter: 100 V AC
DC adapter: 12/24 V DC
[For negative (-) grounded vehicles only]
AC adapter available overseas: 100 V to 240 V AC
[Connect only to household AC outlet]

If a fuse of the DC adapter has blown, replace it with a specified fuse.
Do
If you use an unspecified fuse, fire or malfunction may result. For the specified fuse, refer to each instruction manual.

Keep the power plugs dust-free.
Do
Otherwise, fire may result.
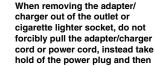
When pulling the AC adapter into the power outlet, firmly plug it in, taking care not to contact with metal straps or the like.
Do
Otherwise, electric shock, short-circuit or fire may result.

Do

When removing the adapter/charger out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not forcibly pull the adapter/charger cord or power cord, instead take hold of the power plug and then pull.

If you pull the plug out by the cord, the cord may be damaged, which could result in electric shock or fire.

Pull the power plug out

When the adapter/charger is not to be used for a long period of time, unplug the power cord from the outlet.

Otherwise, electric shock, fire, or malfunction may result.

Pull the power plug out

If liquids such as water get in the charger, unplug the power cord immediately from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Otherwise, electric shock, smoke or fire may result.

Pull the power plug out

**Before cleaning, pull the power plug out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**

Otherwise, electric shock may result.

Precautions for UIM

Caution

Do

Be careful not to touch the cut surface of the UIM (IC portion) when removing it.

You may hurt your hand or fingers.

Notes on using near electronic medical equipment

■**The description below meets "Guidelines on the Use of Radio-communication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones – Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.**

Warning

Do

Comply with the following in hospitals or health care facilities:

- ●Do not carry the FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units (CCU).
- ●Turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- ●If there is any electronic medical equipment near you, turn off the FOMA terminal even when in a location such as a lobby.
- ●Comply with any regulations of hospital and health care facilities instructing you not to use or carry in a mobile phone.
- ●If the Auto Power ON function is set, deactivate the setting, then turn the power off.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded areas such as inside trains during rush hour, as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be near you.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.

Do

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, use the mobile phone 22 cm or more away from an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

Operation of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator can be affected by radio waves.

Do

Patients using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators (outside medical establishments for treatment at home, etc.) should check the influence of radio waves upon the equipment by consulting its manufacturer.

Operation of electronic medical equipment can be affected by radio waves.

Handling Precautions

General notes

■**Do not wet the equipment.**

The FOMA terminal, battery, adapter/charger, and UIM are not waterproofed. Do not use them in environments, which are high in humidity such as in bathrooms, and do not allow them to get wet from rain. Furthermore, if carrying them against your body, they become moist due to perspiration and the internal parts may become corroded, causing malfunction. If the parts are found to have been damaged due to exposure to the liquids, any repairs will not be covered by warranty, or repairs may not be possible. This may be repaired at a cost if repairs are possible.

■**Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.**

- The screen of the FOMA terminal sometimes has a special coating so that they are easier to see. If you rub it roughly with a dry cloth, it might be scratched. Take care of the way of handling, and use only a dry, soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses. If the screen is left with water drop or stain adhered, smear may be generated or the coating might peel off.
- Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene, detergent or other solvents for cleaning, otherwise the printing may be removed or discoloration may result.

■**Occasionally clean the terminals of the equipment using a dry cotton swab.**

If the terminals become soiled, the connection might deteriorate so that the power turns off or the battery does not charge fully. Wipe the terminals with a dry cloth or cotton swab.

■**Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioner outlets.**

Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction.

■**Do not apply excessive force onto the FOMA terminal and battery pack.**

If you put the FOMA terminal in a bag along with many other articles or sit with the FOMA terminal in a clothes pocket, the display, internal circuitry and the battery pack could be damaged or malfunction. Also, if an external device is left connected to the connector terminal, the connector could be damaged, or malfunction.

■**Carefully read each instruction manual attached to the FOMA terminal, adapter/ charger, or desktop holder.**

■**Do not rub or scratch the display part with metals.**

Doing so might cause damage to the part, resulting in trouble or malfunction.

Notes on handling the FOMA terminal

■**Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.**

The FOMA terminal should be used within a temperature range of 5°C to 35°C and a humidity range of 45% to 85%.

■**The FOMA terminal, if operated near land-line phones, television sets, radios or other devices that are in use, may affect them. You should operate your FOMA terminal as far away from such equipment as possible.**

■**It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored in the FOMA terminal and keep such notes in a safe place.**

We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

■**Do not drop the FOMA terminal or subject it to strong impacts.**

Malfunction or damage may result.

■**Do not insert an external device to the connector terminal (earphone/microphone terminal) at a slant when connecting, and do not pull it out when it is inserted.**

Malfunction or damage may result.

■**Make sure that nothing, such as a strap, gets caught between the parts of the FOMA terminal when you close it.**

Otherwise, malfunction or damage may result.

■**The FOMA terminal becomes warm during use or charging but this is not an abnormality. Use the FOMA terminal as it is.**

■**Do not leave the camera in places exposed to direct sunlight.**

Pixels may be discolored or burns may result.

■**Usually, put the cover of the connector terminal and microSD card slot to use the FOMA terminal.**

Dust or water might enter into the FOMA terminal, causing malfunction.

■**Do not use the FOMA terminal with the back cover left removed.**

The battery pack might come out, or malfunction or damage may result.

■**Do not put a label or sticker on the back of the display part of the FOMA terminal.**

They may be caught in when you open/close the FOMA terminal, and malfunction or damage may result.

■**While you are using the microSD card, never take it off or turn off the power to the FOMA terminal.**

Data may be erased or malfunction may result.

Notes on handling batteries

■**Batteries have a limited life.**

Though it varies depending on the usage state, you are advised to replace the battery if its usable time is extremely short even when you fully charge it. Make sure that you buy the specified battery.

■**Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.**

■**Make sure that the battery is charged when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or have not used it for a long period of time.**

■**The usable time of the battery differs depending on the usage environment or its remaining life.**

■**Depending on how the battery pack is used, it might swell as its operating life becomes short, but this is not a problem.**

17

■**Note the following points when you store a battery pack over a long period:**
- Storage in a fully charged state (the state immediately after charging is completed)
- Storage with no battery power left (the state you cannot turn on the power of the handset due to battery drain)

These may lower the battery pack's performance and shorten its operating life.

You are advised to store the battery pack in the state of two bars of battery icon indication as a guide when you store it for a long period.

Notes on handling chargers/adapters

■**Charge the battery in a place with an appropriate ambient temperature of 5°C to 35°C.**

■**Charge the battery where:**
- There is very little humidity, vibration, and dust.
- There are no land-line phones, television sets or radios nearby.

■**During charging, the adapter/charger may become warm. This is not an abnormality, so continue charging.**

■**Do not use the DC adapter for charging the battery when the car engine is not running.**
The car battery could go flat.

■**When using the power outlet having the disengaging prevention mechanism, observe the instructions given in that instruction manual.**

■**Do not give a strong shock. Also, do not deform the charging terminal.**
Malfunction may result.

■**Be careful not to get your finger or the adapter/charger cord caught in the parts when you house the stand of the desktop holder.**
Accidents such as injury or damage may result.

Notes on handling the UIM

■**Never use more force than necessary when inserting/removing the UIM.**

■**The UIM may become warm during use, but this is not a sign of a malfunction. Continue using it as it is.**

■**The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the UIM into some other types of IC card reader/writer.**

■**Always keep the IC portion clean.**

■**Use a dry soft cloth such as the one for cleaning glasses to clean the equipment.**

■**It is recommended that you make separate notes of the information stored on the UIM and keep such notes in a safe place.**
We take no responsibility for any loss of the stored data items.

■**For the environmental protection, bring any unneeded UIMs to a handling counter such as a docomo shop.**

■**Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.**

■**Do not damage, carelessly touch, or short-circuit the IC.**
Data might be lost or malfunction may result.

■**Do not drop the UIM or subject it to strong impacts.**
Malfunction may result.

■**Do not bend the UIM or place something heavy on it.**
Malfunction may result.

■**Into the FOMA terminal, do not insert the UIM with a label or sticker pasted.**
Malfunction may result.

Notes on using Bluetooth function

■**As the security for communication using the Bluetooth function, the FOMA terminal supports the security function that meets the Bluetooth Specification. However, the security may not be sufficient depending on the configuration. Take care of the security for communication using the Bluetooth function.**

■**Note that even if any leak of data or information occurs while making connection using the Bluetooth function, we take no responsibility.**

■**With the FOMA terminal, you can use the following: Headset, Hands-Free, Audio, Dial-up Communication, Object Push, and Serial Port. With Audio, you might be able to use Audio Video Remote Control. (Only with the compatible Bluetooth devices)**

■**Radio frequencies**
The radio frequencies the Bluetooth function of the FOMA terminal uses are as follows:

```
2.4 FH 1
```

2.4 : Indicates radio facilities that use 2400 MHz frequencies.
FH : Indicates the modulation system is the FH-SS system.
1 : Indicates that a supposed coverage distance is 10 meters or less.
□□□□ : Indicates that all radio frequencies 2400 MHz through 2483.5 MHz are used, and that the frequencies for mobile object identifiers shall not be avoided.

■**Cautions on Using Bluetooth Devices**
Bluetooth operates at radio frequencies assigned to the in-house radio stations for mobile object identifiers that have to be licensed and are used in production lines of a factory, specific unlicensed low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter, referred to "another radio station") in addition to scientific, medical, industrial devices, or home electric appliances such as microwave ovens.
1. Before using this product, make sure that "another radio station" is not operating nearby.
2. If radio interference between this product and "another radio station" occurs, move immediately to another place or turn off power to avoid interference.
3. For further details, contact "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

Notes on handling the FeliCa reader/writer

■**The FeliCa reader/writer function on the FOMA terminal uses very weak radio waves which do not require to be licensed as radio stations.**

■**The FeliCa reader/writer is operated on the 13.56 MHz frequencies. When you use another reader/writer nearby, take enough distance between your FOMA terminal and the reader/writer. Further, ensure that there are no radio stations that use the same frequencies.**

Caution

■**Do not use the modified FOMA terminal. Using a modified FOMA terminal infringes the Radio Law.**
The FOMA terminals are granted technical regulations conformity certification as the specified radio equipment under the Radio Law and bear a "technical conformity mark ⬡" on the nameplate as evidence of conformity. Unscrewing the FOMA terminal and modifying internal components void the technical regulations conformity certification. Do not use the FOMA terminal in this state, which infringes the Radio Law.

■**Be especially careful not to operate the FOMA terminal while driving.**
You will be imposed punishment if you use the mobile phone in your hand while driving. If you answer a call out of necessity, tell the caller with Hands-free that you will call him/her back, park your car to somewhere safe, and then dial.

■**Use the Bluetooth functions in Japan only.**
The Bluetooth functions on the FOMA terminal have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.
You might be imposed punishment if you use them overseas.
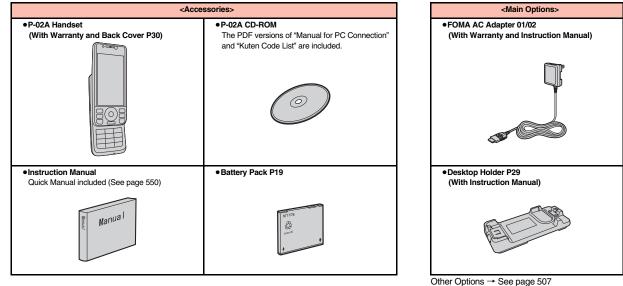
■**Use the FeliCa reader/writer functions in Japan only.**
The FeliCa reader/writer functions on the FOMA terminal have been authorized in compliance with the radio transmission standards in Japan.
You might be imposed punishment if you use them overseas.

Accessories and Main Options

<Accessories>	
●**P-02A Handset** **(With Warranty and Back Cover P30)**	●**P-02A CD-ROM** The PDF versions of "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List" are included.
●**Instruction Manual** Quick Manual included (See page 550)	●**Battery Pack P19**

<Main Options>
●**FOMA AC Adapter 01/02** **(With Warranty and Instruction Manual)**
●**Desktop Holder P29** **(With Instruction Manual)**

20

Before Using the Handset

Part Names and Functions

■**For using earphone**
Connect an optional connector-terminal-compatible earphone. When using a connector-terminal-non-compatible earphone, use an optional plug adapter for connection.
●When inserting or pulling the plug adapter, take hold of the plug for the handset side and insert or pull it straight. Be careful not to take hold of the cover of the connector terminal and plug for the handset side together when you pull it out.
●The Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01 (option) can be connected with a triple pole mini plug only. For details, refer to the instruction manual for the Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal 01.

Flat plug of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Earphone terminal (Flat-plug)

Plug for the handset side

Example for connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (option)

❶Light sensor
・For sensing brightness (See page 114)
●Do not cover the light sensor with your hands or do not put a sticker on it. Doing so might disable you to detect the brightness.

❷Earpiece
・For listening to the other party's voice

❸Display
(See page 27)

❹ Mail key

❺ Menu key

❻ Start key/Hands-free key
・For making/receiving calls (See page 48 and page 62)
・For talking with Hands-free (See page 61)

❼ Clear key/i-Widget key
・For returning to the previous operation
・For clearing entered text or a phone number

❽Microphone
・For speaking to the other party

❾Inside camera
・For shooting photos of yourself (See page 230)
・For displaying your face during a videophone call

❿ Speed selector

⓫Call/Charging indicator
・Flickers for incoming calls/mail and during a call. (See page 117)
・Lights in red during charging.
●The flickering pattern and color tone of the illumination might look different depending on the type of the FOMA terminal you use.

⓬ i-mode key/i-αppli key

⓭ Camera key/1Seg key

⓮ Power/End key
・For ending calls
・For ending respective functions
・For turning on the power (for at least one second)/ For turning off the power (for at least two seconds) (See page 43)

⓯Numeric keys
・For entering phone numbers and text

⓰Connector terminal
・For connecting the AC adapter (option), DC adapter (option), FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/ 02 (option), or Stereo Earphone Set 01 (option), etc.
●Integrated terminal for connecting earphone or for charging, etc.

⓱1Seg antenna
・For receiving 1Seg broadcasting (See page 251)

⓲Outside camera
・For shooting portraits and/or landscapes (See page 230)
・For catching sight of persons and/or landscapes during a videophone call

⓳Photo light
・Lights/Flickers when you shoot with the camera. Used for shooting in a dark place. (See page 239)

⓴ mark
・The IC card is mounted.
●Use the IC card function placing this mark over the scanning device. You cannot dismount the IC card. (See page 315)

㉑FOMA antenna
●The FOMA antenna is embedded in the handset. Do not cover the antenna with your hand for better communication.

㉒Speaker
・For sounding ring tones
・For listening to the other party's voice when Hands-free is activated (See page 61)

㉓Infrared data port
・Used for infrared communication and the infrared remote control. (See page 382 and page 386)

㉔microSD card slot
・For inserting microSD card (See page 368)

㉕Back cover
・Remove this when attaching/removing the battery pack and UIM. (See page 37 and page 39)
●Do not peel off the sticker on the back of the back cover. If you peel it off, you might not be able to read and write the IC card.

㉖Charging terminal

㉗ Multi key

㉘ Side ▲ key
・For scrolling up page by page

㉙ Side ▼ key
・For scrolling down page by page

㉚ Recording key/PushTalk key
・For making/receiving PushTalk calls (See page 78 and page 81)

㉛Strap hole

23

Opening/Closing FOMA Terminal

Hold the FOMA terminal with both hands to slide the display upward/downward.

Take care not to touch the keys when you open or close the FOMA terminal. Key operation errors may result.

≥When a call comes in, you can answer it just by opening the FOMA terminal. (See page 65)
≥When a missed call or new mail message is found, you can display the detailed Missed Call display or the Inbox list just by opening the FOMA terminal. (See page 113)

Information
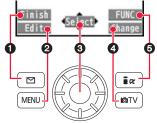
≥You can use the horizontal display for Full Browser, PC Movie player, Camera, 1Seg, Music&Video Channel, i-αppli, i-motion player, and Video player. You cannot use it for other functions.
≥When you open/close the FOMA terminal while a confirmation display for selecting "YES/NO" is shown, the confirmation display may be cleared.

Navigation Displays and Key Operations

When you want to execute the operation shown on the vertical display, press the corresponding key as below.

≥While the horizontal display is shown, you can operate in the same way as on the vertical display depending on the function.

■**Basic display examples and key assignments**

❶	Indicates the operation you can perform with the ☑ key.	Finish ☑
❷	Indicates the operation you can perform with the MENU key.	Edit Store
❸	Indicates the operation you can perform with the ● key.	Select Set
❸	Indicates the direction in which you can scroll and select items with the ◯ key.	◀ ▲ ▼ ▶
❹	Indicates the operation you can perform with the ◉ key.	Change Detail
❺	Indicates the operation you can perform with the iα key.	FUNC Set

24

■**Operating speed selector**

○ (up)
· Moves the cursor or highlighted display up. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
· Scrolls the page up.

○ (left)
· Moves the cursor to the left.
· Scrolls back page by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)

○ (right)
· Moves the cursor to the right.
· Scrolls forward page by page. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)

○ (down)
· Moves the cursor or highlighted display down. (Press and hold to scroll continuously.)
· Scrolls the page down.
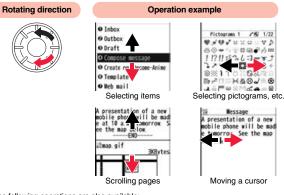
◉ (center)
· Fixes the operation.

Operating by Rotating Speed Selector

Depending on the display being shown, you can select items and move the cursor by rotating the speed selector in the same way as you press ○.

Rotating direction	Operation example

Selecting items

Selecting pictograms, etc.

Scrolling pages

Moving a cursor

●The following operations are also available:
· Adjusting earpiece volume, ring volume, etc. (See page 65, page 66)
· Adjusting zoom magnification when shooting with the camera (See page 238)
· Adjusting volume during music playback, etc. (See page 281)
· Switching the displayed still images (See page 345)
· Adjusting volume during playback of movies, i-motion movies, etc. (See page 352)

Information

●The rotating operation is not valid in Power Saver Mode.
●The rotating operation may not be valid depending on the function.

Speed Selector Setting

You can set whether to validate the rotating operation of the speed selector.

1 (MENU)▶**Set./Service**▶**Other settings**
▶**Speed selector setting**▶**ON or OFF**

Information

●Depending on the i-αppli program, the speed selector might not be operable even when "ON" is set.

Key Guidance

You can set whether to show the operation for such as pressing ○, ○, ○, and ○, when you rotate the speed selector from the Stand-by display.

1 (MENU)▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Key guidance**
▶**ON or OFF**

When "ON" is set

When you rotate the speed selector from the Stand-by display, the operation for such as pressing ○, ○, ○, and ○ are shown. (See page 26)
●The key guidance is shown regardless of "Speed selector setting".

25

Main Key Operations from the Stand-by Display
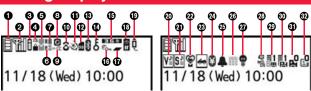
From the Stand-by display, you can execute the following actions by operating each key:

Key operation	Press the key for a short time	Press and hold the key for at least one second
⦿	Shows the display for selecting an icon, etc. on the Stand-by display. (See page 31, page 68, page 111)	Switches Key Lock on/off. (See page 131)
⦿	Shows the Channel list. (See page 210)	—
⦿	Shows the Search Phonebook display. (See page 94)	Shows the registration display for the Phonebook entries. (See page 88)
⦿	Shows the Received Call list. (See page 53)	Shows the Received Address list. (See page 171)
⦿	Shows the Redial list. (See page 52)	Shows the Sent Address list. (See page 171)
✉	Shows the Mail menu. (See page 162)	Executes Check New Messages. (See page 157)
📧	Shows the i-mode menu. (See page 190)	Shows the Software list. (See page 291)
MENU	Shows Main Menu. (See page 32)	Sets/Releases IC Card Lock. (See page 316)
📷	Activates the camera in Photo Mode. (See page 233)	Starts 1Seg. (See page 253)
📞	Makes a call. (See page 48)	Accesses a voice dial entry. (See page 100)
📵	Shows/Clears the icons, etc. on the Stand-by display. (See page 112)	Turns off the power. (Press and hold the key for at least two seconds) (See page 43)
CLR	Executes i-Widget. (See page 310)	Resets Main Menu. (See page 116)
0	Enters "0".	Enters "+".

Key operation	Press the key for a short time	Press and hold the key for at least one second
1	Enters "1".	Measures your current location and executes the GPS function. (See page 326)
2	Enters "2".	
3	Enters "3".	
4	Enters "4".	
5	Enters "5".	Switches the backlight on/off. (See page 114)
6	Enters "6".	
7	Enters "7".	
8	Enters "8".	Switches View Blind on/off. (See page 115)
9	Enters "9".	
✳	Enters "✳".	Activates/Deactivates Public Mode (Drive Mode). (See page 67)
#	Enters "#".	Activates/Deactivates Manner Mode. (See page 108)
🔖	Shows the Multitask Menu. (See page 402)	Shows the display for setting 3G/GSM Setting. (See page 465)
		Switches menu functions. (See page 402)
▲	Switches between the i-αppli Stand-by display and normal i-αppli program. (See page 308)	Activates/Deactivates Manner Mode with the FOMA terminal closed. (See page 108)
		Activates 2in1 with the FOMA terminal opened. (See page 450)
▼	Plays back a record message/voice memo. (See page 70)	Plays back a videophone record message/movie memo. (See page 71)
🎵	Shows the PushTalk Phonebook list. (See page 82)	Activates MUSIC Player. (See page 279)

26

Viewing Display

❶	🔋 🔋 🔋	Battery level (estimate) (See page 42)
❷	📶 Strong ◀━━━━▶ Weak	Radio waves reception level (estimate)
	📵	You are out of the FOMA service area or radio waves do not reach.
	self	During Self Mode (See page 126)
❸	🔲	During i-mode (See page 190)
	⇅	During i-mode communication (See page 190)
	📡	During packet communication (The icon differs depending on the communication status.)
	📡	During PushTalk communication (See page 78)
	⊙	You get out of the service area while Network Search Mode is set to "Manual". (See page 465)
❹	🔒	During SSL communication (See page 191)
	✉(pink)	Unread i-mode mail or an SMS message exists. (See page 155 and page 187)
	✉ (dark blue)	The area for i-mode mail and SMS messages in the FOMA terminal is full. (See page 155 and page 187)
❺	📱	The area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
	📱(pink)	Unread mail exists, and the area for SMS messages on the UIM (FOMA card) is full.
	📱 (dark blue)	Both the FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card) are full.
	📧	Area Mail exists. (See page 180)

❻	R F (yellow)	Unread Messages R/F exist. (See page 177)
	R F (dark blue)	The area for Messages R/F in the FOMA terminal is full. (See page 178)
	▌(pink)	i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center. (See page 157)
	▌ (dark blue)	The box for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 155)
❼	▌▌ (yellow)	Messages R/F are held at the i-mode Center. (See page 178)
	▌▌ (dark blue)	The box for Messages R/F at the i-mode Center is full. (See page 178)
	▌	i-mode mail is held at the i-mode Center while Receive Option Setting is set to "ON". (See page 156)
❽	🔲	New i-concier information exists. (See page 212)
❾	⇥α	An i-αppli call you did not reply to exists. (See page 306)
❿	🔊	During a voice call
	📹	During a videophone call
	📡	During 64K data communication

⓫	🔄	During measuring the current location (See page 326)
	📍 GPS	Location Request Set. is set to "ON" or "Reject numbers unset", and it is within the validity period. (See page 338)
	📍 GPS	Location Request Set. is set to "ON" or "Reject numbers unset", and it is out of the validity period. (See page 338)
⓬	💾	A microSD card is inserted.(See page 369)
	💾	Data is being read to/written from the microSD card.
	💾	A write-protected microSD card is inserted. (See page 369)
	💾	The inserted microSD card cannot be used. (See page 369)
	💾	A microSD card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 377)
	💾	A microSD card is inserted, and the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in MTP Mode. (See page 377)
⓭	📶(blue)	A Bluetooth device is connected. (See page 424 and page 426)
	📶(black)	A Bluetooth device is connected and power consumption is low. (See page 424)

27↴

	🔒	During Lock All (See page 124)
	P On	During Personal Data Lock (See page 127)
	D On	During Keypad Dial Lock (See page 131)
	S On	During Secret Mode or Secret Data Only (See page 132)
	🔒 On	During IC Card Lock (See page 316)
	D/P On	Both Keypad Dial Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
	D/S On	Both Keypad Dial Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are set.
⑭	🔒	Both IC Card Lock and Lock All are set.
	🔒 On	Both IC Card Lock and Personal Data Lock are set.
	🔒 On	Both IC Card Lock and Keypad Dial Lock are set.
	🔒 On	Both IC Card Lock and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are set.
	🔒 On	IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Personal Data Lock are simultaneously set.
	🔒 On	IC Card Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, and Secret Mode/Secret Data Only are simultaneously set.
⑮	3G+ 3G GSM GPRS	Type of in-use network (See page 461)
	OFFICEED	You are in the OFFICEED area. (See page 456)
	⏰ On	Timer Lock ON At Close is set. (See page 127)
⑯	🔑	During Key Lock (See page 131)
	🔑	While Key Lock is temporarily released (See page 132)

	➤	During Multitask (See page 401)
	➤	Multiple functions are activated. (See page 401)
	➡♪	While watching a 1Seg program (See page 253)
⑰	➡♪	During recording of a 1Seg program (See page 260)
	➡♪	During recording of a 1Seg program by Timer Recording (See page 264)
	➡♪	During pause of 1Seg program recording (See page 261)
	♩♪	During music playback (See page 279)
	♩♪	During music pause (See page 279)
⑱	📶	During infrared communication (See page 382 and page 386)
	🔌	The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in Communication Mode.
	🔌	The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option) is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 377)
⑲	🎧	During talk or communication through a USB Hands-free compatible device (See page 61)
	🎧	A USB Hands-free compatible device is connected. (See page 61)
	🎧	A USB Hands-free compatible device is connected in microSD Mode. (See page 61)
⑳	V₁ V₂ V₃	Vibrator is set to other than "OFF". (See page 106)
㉑	S₁ S₂ S₃	Ring Volume is set to "Silent" or Mail/Msg. Ring Time is set to "OFF". (See page 66 and page 108)
㉒	🔇	During Manner Mode (See page 108)
㉓	📷	Remote Monitoring is set to "ON". (See page 77)
㉓	🚗	During Public Mode (Drive Mode) (See page 67)

㉔	💰	The call cost has exceeded the specified limit. (See page 417)
㉕	🔔 🕐	An alarm is set. (See page 264 and page 405)
㉖	🎵	A Music&Video Channel program is booked. (See page 270)
	💡	Backlight is set to "OFF". (See page 114)
㉗	░	View Blind is set to "ON". (See page 115)
	🔲	Backlight is set to "OFF" and View Blind is set to "ON".
㉘	📱	USB Mode Setting is set to "microSD mode". (See page 377)
	💻	USB Mode Setting is set to "MTP mode". (See page 377)
㉙	📧1～📧5 📧+	Voice mail messages for Number B are held at the Voice Mail Center in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 455)
㉚	📧1～📧5 📧+	Voice mail messages are held at the Voice Mail Center. (See page 440)
㉛	📼0～📼5	The number of record messages (See page 69)
㉜	📼0～📼2	The number of videophone record messages (See page 69)

● For the horizontal display, icons appear at the lower right of the display.
● The clock at the upper right of the display (at the lower right of the horizontal display) does not appear when the icon ⑱ or ⑲ is displayed.

Information

● Some characters and symbols on the display might be modified or abbreviated.
● The color liquid crystal display uses high-precision production technology. The slightest change in the environment or other factors may result in unlit or permanently lit pixels, but this is not a manufacturing defect.

28

<Desktop Icon>
Using Icons on Desktop

Status icon

Notification icon
Desktop icon

11/18 (Wed) 10:00

■**Operation when a status icon is selected**

V♭ V♮ V♯	Shows the display for Vibrator. (See page 106)
S♭ S♮ S♯	Shows the display for Ring Volume. (See page 66)
📱	Shows the display for Manner Mode Set. (See page 110)
🔧	Shows the display for Remote Monitoring. (See page 77)
🚗	Shows the display for releasing Public Mode (Drive Mode). (See page 67)
📋	Shows the display for Notice Call Cost. (See page 417)
🔔 📋	Shows the list of Alarm, Schedule, ToDo, TV Timer, or Timer Recording. (See page 261, page 262, page 404, page 407 or page 411)
⊞	Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 270)
💡	Shows the display for Backlight. (See page 114)
🔲	Shows the display for View Blind. (See page 115)
🔳	Shows the display for "Set./Service" → "Display".
🔌 🔌	Shows the display for USB Mode Setting. (See page 377)
📞1 ～ 📞5 · 📞+	Shows the display for playing back Voice Mail messages. (See page 441)
📞1 ～ 📞5 · 📞+	Shows the display for playing back Voice Mail messages. (See page 441)
📼0 ～ 📼5	Shows the display for Rec. Msg/Voice Memo. (See page 69, page 70, page 106 and page 415)
📼0 ～ 📼2	Shows the display for Rec. Msg/Voice Memo. (See page 69, page 70, page 106 and page 415)

■**Operation when a notification icon is selected**

📞 ((Miss 1	**Missed call** Shows the Missed Call list. (See page 53)
📞 ((Miss 1	**Missed call to Number B of 2in1** Shows the Missed Call list. (See page 53)
▬▬ Msg	**Record message** Shows the Record Message list. (See page 70)
🎥 Msg	**Videophone record message** Shows the Videophone Record Message list. (See page 71)
✉ New 1	**New i-mode mail or SMS** Shows the Inbox list. (See page 160)
💬 New 1	**New chat mail** Starts Chat Mail. (See page 184)
R New 1 F New 1	**New Message R/F** Shows the Message R/F list. (See page 178)
✖ Notrun	**i-αppli did not start automatically** Shows the i-αppli Auto Start Info. (See page 305)
✖ New	**i-αppli call you did not reply to** Shows the i-αppli call logs. (See page 307)
🔷 New	**A ToruCa file is received from a scanning device** Shows the ToruCa File list. (See page 320)
⚠ Error	**A security error occurred on the i-αppli Stand-by display** Shows the Security Error History. (See page 293)
⊞ Update	**Success in downloading a Music&Video Channel program** Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 270)
✖ Fail	**Failure in downloading a Music&Video Channel program** Activates Music&Video Channel. (See page 271)
🔔 Miss	**Missed alarm** Shows the contents of the alarm that could not be notified. (See page 406)
🖵 Miss	**Missed TV timer** Shows the contents of the TV timer that could not be notified. (See page 265)
🖵 REC	**Timer recording was completed** Shows the contents and results of the timer recording. (See page 265)
📼 VM	**Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center** Shows the display for playing back Voice Mail messages. (See page 441)

Update	**The Phonebook could not be updated by Data Security Service** Shows the update display for Data Security Service. (See page 137)
Complete	**Provide Location was executed automatically** Shows Location History. (See page 335)
Fail	**Provide Location could not be executed automatically** Shows Location History. (See page 335)
Miss	**You did not respond to a location provision request** Shows Location History. (See page 335)
Update	**Software Update is needed** Starts Software Update. (See page 526)
	Software Update was executed Shows the Update Completion display or the reason for not completing. (See page 525)
Auto-update	**Software rewriting is possible** Shows the rewriting confirmation display. (See page 524)
Update	**Pattern data was updated automatically** Shows the updated result. (See page 530)
USB	**The FOMA terminal and a personal computer are connected by the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option)** Shows the display for USB Mode Setting. (See page 377)

■**Operation when a desktop icon is selected**

	Shows the dialing display with the phone number entered. (See page 48 and page 78)
	Shows the site of that URL. (See page 190)
	Shows the site of that URL by Full Browser. (See page 216)
	Shows the Message Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 142)
	Shows the SMS Composition display with the mail address entered. (See page 186)
	Starts the i-αppli program.※ (See page 291)
	Shows it on the Picture viewer.※ (See page 344)
	Plays it back by the i-motion player.※ (See page 351)
	Plays it back by the Video player.※ (See page 358)
	Plays it back by the Chara-den player.※ (See page 361)
	Plays it back by the Melody player.※ (See page 364)

	Shows it on the PDF viewer.※ (See page 389)
	Shows it on the ToruCa viewer.※ (See page 318)
	Shows the Private menu. (See page 413)
	Shows the Bar Code Reader menu. (See page 245)
	Shows the Ir Data Receiving display. (See page 384 and page 385)
	Shows the Camera menu. (See page 233 and page 236)
	Shows the Bluetooth Function Selection display. (See page 424, page 426, and page 428)
	Starts Voice Recorder. (See page 388)
	Shows the i-concier display. (See page 212)
	Shows the list of Alarm. (See page 404)
	Shows the Calendar display. (See page 408)
	Shows the ToDo list. (See page 411)
	Shows the list of Text Memo. (See page 417)
	Shows the calculator. (See page 417)
	Shows the display for 使いかたナビ (Guide). (See page 36)
	Starts MUSIC Player. (See page 278)
	Shows the Music&Video Channel display. (See page 272)
	Shows the Viewer display. (See page 253)
	Starts i-αppli Program Guide. (See page 258)

※ When the original data is deleted or overwritten, the desktop icon is disabled.

Paste Icons to Desktop

You can paste up to 15 desktop icons of such as phone numbers, mail addresses, etc.

1 **The display for an item to be pasted** ▶ $\boxed{i\alpha}$ (　FUNC　)
▶**Add desktop icon**▶**YES**

- ●When you operate from the detailed mail display, select "Store" from the Function menu and then select "Add desktop icon". If the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be pasted.
- ●When you operate from the Full Browser display, select "Others" from the Function menu and then select "Add desktop icon".

Information

- ●You may not be able to paste the URL to the desktop depending on the site.
- ●You can store the title for URL of up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. When the number of characters for the title exceeds that much, the characters in excess are deleted. If no title exists for a site, up to 22 half-pitch characters of the URL excluding "http://" or "https://" is displayed.
- ●Some files and data might not be pasted to the desktop.

Proceed to Respective Functions from Icons on Desktop

1 **Press** �É.

Use ◊ to highlight an icon, and press �É(Select).

- ●Up to five "Desktop icons" are displayed. If there are six or more icons, "◀" and "▶" are displayed.
- ●A "Notification icon" is deleted when each function is executed. To delete all "Notification icons", press and hold CLR for at least one second from the display in step 1.

When a record message icon is selected

Information

- ●When the notification icon of "Messages are held at the Voice Mail Center" (▧) appears while you are overseas, you cannot operate the Voice Mail function from the notification icon. Follow the steps of "Operate Voice Mail Service at the Country You Stay" on page 468.

Check Details of Desktop Icon $\boxed{\text{MENU}}\boxed{6}\boxed{3}$

1 $\boxed{\text{MENU}}$▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**
▶**Desktop icon**

The list of desktop icons pasted to the desktop is displayed.

Desktop Icon list

2 **Select the icon whose details are to be displayed.**

Function Menu of the Desktop Icon List

- ●You can show the Function menu also by pressing $\boxed{i\alpha}$(　FUNC　), while highlighting an icon from the Stand-by display.

Add to desktop	▶**Put a check mark for the function to be added** ▶$\boxed{\boxtimes}$(Finish)

Edit title	▶**Enter a title.** ●You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. However, the number of characters for the title displayed when you highlight the icon is up to 11 full-pitch/ 22 half-pitch characters from the beginning of the title.
Sort	▶**Select a desktop icon▶Use** ⊚ **to change the order** ▶⊙(Select) ●To change the order in succession, repeat the above steps. ▶⊠(Finish)▶YES
Reset desktop	The desktop icons are reset to the default. ▶YES
Delete this	▶YES
Delete all	▶YES

i-Widget Display and Operations

From the i-Widget display, you can simultaneously start multiple Widget αppli programs and show them on a list.

❶Widget αppli

You can show a Widget αppli program.

You can show the Widget αppli operation display by selecting it.

❷Navigation displays

Navigations corresponding to the key operations are indicated.

●You can randomly change the display order of Widget αppli programs by pressing [ｉα][シャッフル (Shuffle)] from the i-Widget display.

●See page 310 for detailed operations of i-Widget.

❶

❷

i-Widget display

Displaying Description of Icons

The symbols on the display (such as , , and) are called icons. You can check the meanings of them on the display.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Icons**
▶**Use** ⊚ **to highlight an icon.**

Selecting Menu

Press MENU **of the FOMA terminal to show Main Menu and then execute, set, or check respective functions.**

●Some functions can be selected also by the operation other than pressing MENU. In this manual, the operation by the easier way is described.

●You can also switch to Simple Menu focusing on only basic functions for easy operation. (See page 115)

●This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (see page 116). If you use Kisekae Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu.

Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.

■**Scroll Selection**

Main Menu is composed of 12 main menu icons indicating each function.

●If you select a main menu icon, the Sub-menu Item Selection display appears. If you further select a sub-menu item, the Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display appears.

●By repeating selecting, you can set and check the function.

■**Menu Number Selection**

You can display some functions by pressing MENU + menu number (see page 476).

■**Multitask is Supported**

●You can simultaneously use some functions in Main Menu. (See page 401)

Scroll Selection

In this manual, the description of the speed selector operation (selection of top/bottom/left/right, and press of ⊙ after selecting/entering a function item) is omitted. Scroll selection is explained below using the example of selecting the function "Quality alarm":
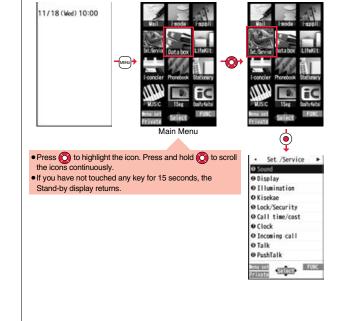
Description Example of Steps

| Main menu icon | Sub-menu item | Function name of lower sub-menu item |

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Talk**▶**Quality alarm**▶**Select an alarm.**

No tone. . . . . Does not sound.
High tone. . . . . . . High alarm sounds.
Low tone. . . . . Low alarm sounds.

Items which appear on the display

STEP

1 Select a main menu icon from the menu function
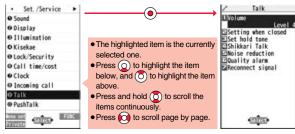
Select "Set./Service" from Main Menu. Main Menu at purchase differs depending on the body color. (See page 480)

11/18 (Wed) 10:00

Main Menu

●Press ⊙ to highlight the icon. Press and hold ⊙ to scroll the icons continuously.
●If you have not touched any key for 15 seconds, the Stand-by display returns.

Set./Service

❶ Sound
❷ Display
❸ Illumination
❹ Kisekae
❺ Lock/Security
❻ Call time/cost
❼ Clock
❽ Incoming call
❾ Talk
❿ PushTalk

2 Select a sub-menu item from the menu function
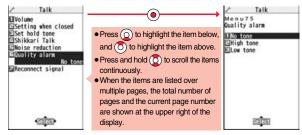
Select "Talk" from "Set./Service".

- The highlighted item is the currently selected one.
- Press ⊙ to highlight the item below, and ⊙ to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold ⊙ to scroll the items continuously.
- Press ⊙ to scroll page by page.

STEP 3 Select a desired lower sub-menu item (function)

Select "Quality alarm" from "Talk".

- Press ⊙ to highlight the item below, and ⊙ to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold ⊙ to scroll the items continuously.
- When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the display.
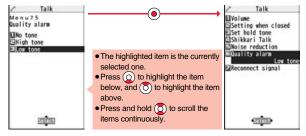
STEP 4 Set or check the function

Some menu items have even more detailed menus.
The example below shows how to set "Low tone" for "Quality alarm".

- The highlighted item is the currently selected one.
- Press ⊙ to highlight the item below, and ⊙ to highlight the item above.
- Press and hold ⊙ to scroll the items continuously.

Menu Number Selection

Menu Number Selection is explained below using the following example:

Description Example of Menu Number

Menu number

<Quality Alarm>   MENU 7 5
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Nearly Disconnecting

STEP

1

Call up the function using the menu number

From the Stand-by display, press MENU 7 5.

11/18 (Wed) 10:00

MENU →

7 5 →

Talk
Menu75
Quality alarm

1 No tone
2 High tone
3 Low tone

Select

Function Menu

If you press i α when "FUNC" is shown at the lower right of the display, the Function menu including selectable items such as "Save", "Edit", and "Delete" appears in each operation. The contents of the Function menu depend on the display from which you show the Function menu.

● When the items are listed over multiple pages, the total number of pages and the current page number are shown at the upper right of the Function Menu display.
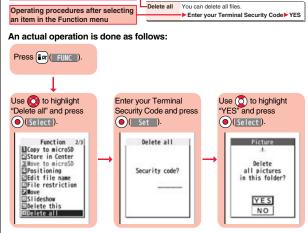
i α →

Function 1/2
1 Edit picture
2 Set display
3 Picture info
4 Location info
5 Attach to mail
6 Send Ir data
7 iC transmission
8 Display size
9 Add desktop icon
0 Copy to microSD

Description Example for Function Menu
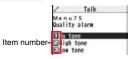
In this manual, the operation of the Function menu is described as follows:

Item displayed in the Function menu

Operating procedures after selecting an item in the Function menu

Delete all   You can delete all files.
▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code▶ YES

An actual operation is done as follows:

Press i α (FUNC).

↓

Use ◎ to highlight "Delete all" and press ◉ (Select).

Function 2/3
1 Copy to microSD
2 Store in Center
3 Move to microSD
4 Positioning
5 Edit file name
6 File restriction
7 Move
8 Slideshow
9 Delete this
0 Delete all

→

Enter your Terminal Security Code and press ◉ (Set).

Delete all

Security code?

→

Use ◎ to highlight "YES" and press ◉ (Select).

Picture
↑
Delete
all pictures
in this folder?

YES
NO

To select an item quickly <Direct selection>

Press the numeric key corresponding to the displayed item number.

Talk
Menu75
Quality alarm

1 No tone
2 High tone
3 Low tone

Item number

35

Item scroll

When menu items are listed over multiple pages, you can show the previous/next page by pressing ⚪ with the uppermost/lowermost item highlighted. You can press ⚪ to scroll through page by page. When Page ▲/Page ▼ is displayed on the display, you can scroll through page by page also by pressing MENU(Page ▲)/⚪(Page ▼).

● Depending on the display being shown, such as lower sub-menu items, you might be able to scroll through page by page also by pressing ▲/▼ instead of ⚪.

Check box

With the functions you can select multiple items, put a check mark for check boxes to select them.

Each time you press ⚪(Select), you can switch "☐" and "☑".

With some functions, you can put or clear check marks at a time by pressing ⚡(FUNC) and selecting "Select all/Release all" or by pressing MENU(SEL all/RLS all).

● "✓" is placed to the selected item depending on the function.

After finishing the operation

The Lower Sub-menu Item Selection display is shown. When you press ⌐, the Stand-by display returns (except during Multitask). The Stand-by display or the former display automatically returns depending on the function.

To cancel the operation midway

Press ⌐. The contents of the setting are abandoned and the Stand-by display or the former display returns. The confirmation display appears asking whether to abandon the setting contents depending on the function. You can press CLR to return to the previous operation.

When the "YES/NO" selection display appears

Press ⚪ to highlight "YES" or "NO", then press ⚪(Select).

For Reset Settings

<Guide>
When You Forget Key Operation

You can search for the functions you want to know and use, and then check the operating methods. You can execute some functions from "使いかたナビ (Guide)". This function is available in Japanese Mode only.

1 MENU▶ステーショナリー (Stationery)
▶使いかたナビ (Guide)▶Select an item.

おすすめ機能 **(Recommendable functions)**
. . . Displays the recommendable functions. Go to step 3.
キーワード検索 **(From keywords)**
. . . Enter keywords and retrieve. Go to step 2
機能一覧検索 **(From Function list)**
. . . Retrieves from the function list. Go to step 3.
検索履歴 **(Search history)**
. . . Displays up to 30 search histories. Go to step 3.
● Highlight each item and press ⚪(ヘルプ); then the detailed operating methods are displayed.
● The 使いかたナビ (Guide) display appears also by selecting the 使いかたナビ (Guide) icon " ❓ " pasted on the desktop at purchase.

2 **Enter a keyword.**

Up to 50 search results are displayed.
● You can enter up to 24 full-pitch/48 half-pitch characters.

3 **Select a function▶Select an item.**

機能の説明 **(Description)** . . . . Displays explanations for the function.
操作のしかた **(How to operate)** . . . Displays the operating method.
この機能を使う **(Operate function)**
. . . . Executes the function. Operate each function.
● For some functions, press ⚪(選択) several times for selection.
● You can display explanations about the function also by pressing ⚪(説明) while highlighting the function.
● To delete search history, press ⚡(機能) and select "1件削除 (Delete this)" or "全削除 (Delete all)", then select "YES".

Using UIM (FOMA Card)

The UIM is an IC card that holds your information such as phone numbers. It can hold data such as Phonebook entries and SMS messages as well. By sharing a UIM, you can operate multiple FOMA terminals for multiple purposes.
You cannot use the FOMA terminal for communication such as voice and videophone calls, i-mode, sending/receiving mail, or packet communication unless the UIM is inserted.
For details on how to use the UIM, refer to the UIM instruction manual.
When inserting or removing the UIM, take care not to accidentally touch or scratch the IC.

Insert/Remove

You need to turn off the power and then remove the battery before you insert the UIM. (See page 39)

■Inserting

1 With the golden IC surface downward, push the UIM slowly to the end while pressing the surface of it.

Cut

■Removing

1 While sliding the UIM, pull it out slowly.

Information

●Make sure that you insert/remove the UIM with the FOMA terminal closed and held in your hand.
●Take care not to force the UIM into place because this can break it.
●Take care not to lose the UIM once you remove it.
●When you replace your UIM (except during Omakase Lock), you need to enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)

Security Code

You can set two security codes, PIN1 and PIN2, for a UIM. (See page 122)

Security Function of UIM
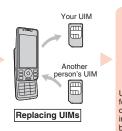
The FOMA terminal has the UIM security function (UIM restriction function) as a security function to protect your data files.
If you obtain data files by the method below with the UIM inserted, UIM security function is automatically set to them.
・ **When downloading images or melodies and so on, from sites or Internet web pages**
・ **When receiving i-mode mail with file attachments**
The data files with the UIM security can be browsed, played back, started, edited, attached to mail, or transferred via infrared rays only when the UIM used for obtaining is inserted. When the UIM used for obtaining the data or files is not inserted, or when another UIM is inserted, these functions are not operable.
●**In the explanation hereafter, the UIM used to obtain data and files is referred to as "your UIM" and other UIMs as "another person's UIM".**

If the UIM used for obtaining data files or mail messages is inserted, you can browse/play back the data files with the UIM security.

Your UIM

Another person's UIM

Replacing UIMs

Unless the UIM used for obtaining data files or mail messages is inserted, you cannot browse/play back the data files with the UIM security.

●When the UIM is not inserted or when another person's UIM is inserted, the following types of data and files are displayed with the restrictions symbol, "   ":
  · Videophone record messages   · Movie memos   · Screen memos
  · Templates   · i-αppli programs   · Images
  · i-motion movies   · Chara-den images   · Melodies
  · Machi-chara images   · Kisekae Tool files   · PDF files
  · Chaku-uta®/Chaku-uta Full® music files   · Downloaded dictionaries
  · Files attached or pasted to i-mode mail in the Inbox
  · Files attached to i-mode mail in the Outbox/Draft (except the data shot or edited with the FOMA terminal)
  · Messages R/F with files (melodies or images) attached or pasted
  · Images inserted into Deco-mail text
  ※This function applies to the pre-installed i-αppli programs, Chara-den images, Deco-mail pictograms, etc. if they are reinstalled (upgraded) from a site.
  ※"Chaku-uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment Inc.
●The preview image for the data file with the UIM security appears as shown on the right.

Information
●When the UIM security is set for data files, you cannot set them for the functions such as "Display setting" and "Select ring tone" when another person's UIM is inserted.
●When the data files with the UIM security is set for "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", the FOMA terminal works with their default settings if you remove your UIM or replace it with another person's UIM. Also, a Machi-chara image is cleared. If you insert your UIM again, your settings are enabled again.
●The UIM security function is not set for the data files received using the infrared communication function or data transmission (OBEX™ communication) function and the still images/movies shot or edited with the FOMA terminal.
●Even when another person's UIM is inserted, you can move/delete data files with the UIM security.
●The settings of the following functions are stored on the UIM:
  · SMS validity period   · SMS center selection   · Select language
  · PLMN setting   · PIN1 code, PIN2 code   · PIN1 code entry set
  · Validating/Invalidating DOCOMO Certificate 1 and user certificate

Types of UIM (FOMA Card)

If you use the blue UIM with your FOMA terminal, note that following specifications differ from those of the green/white UIM:

Functions	UIM		Reference
	(blue)	(green/white)	
Number of digits of the phone number that can be stored in the UIM Phonebook	20 max.	26 max.	89
Operation of user certificate to use FirstPass	Not available	Available	206
Use of WORLD WING	Not available	Available	460
Use of Service Numbers for "DOCOMO repair counter" and "General inquiries <docomo Information Center>"	Not available	Available	447

■**WORLD WING**
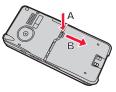
WORLD WING is the DOCOMO FOMA international roaming service that enables you to use the current phone number overseas for making and receiving calls using the UIM (green/white) and service compatible mobile phone.

●You do not need to subscribe to WORLD WING if you have subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005. If you offered that you did not need WORLD WING at the time you signed up for the FOMA service, or when you have midway canceled WORLD WING, you are required to take the procedures to newly subscribe to WORLD WING.

●If you have signed up for the FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and have not yet subscribed to WORLD WING, you are required to subscribe to it.

●This service is not available with some billing plans.

●If you lose your UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, immediately contact DOCOMO to take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the UIM. For inquiries, see "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual. Note that you are still charged the call and communication fees incurred after you lose it or have it stolen.

Attaching/Removing Battery Pack
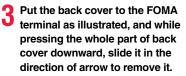
Use the FOMA terminal's dedicated Battery Pack P19.

■**Attaching**

1 While pressing the "⎯" part of the back cover in the direction A, slide the back cover (2 mm or more) in the direction B to unlock and remove it.
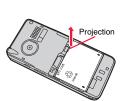
●Securely hold the FOMA terminal not to let it open and then remove the back cover.

2 With the arrow mark facing up, fit the tab side of the battery pack to the FOMA terminal securely, and then push the battery pack into the direction B while pressing it against the direction A.

Arrow mark

3 Put the back cover to the FOMA terminal as illustrated, and while pressing the whole part of back cover downward, slide it in the direction of arrow to remove it.

●Confirm there is no gap between the back cover and the FOMA terminal.

■**Removing**

1 Remove the back cover following the step 1 of "■Attaching", and take hold of the projection of the battery pack to lift it up.

Projection

Information

●Make sure that you attach/remove the battery with the FOMA terminal closed and held in your hand after you turn off the power.

●If you try to force the battery into place, you could damage the UIM or the terminal part of the FOMA terminal.

Charging

Use the FOMA terminal's dedicated Battery Pack P19.

Life of battery pack

●Battery packs are consumables. The usable time shortens slightly each time they are charged.

●When the usable time of the battery pack becomes half the time it was purchased, replacing is recommended because the battery pack is nearing the end of its life. Depending on the use conditions, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this is not a problem.

●The life of the battery pack may shorten if you use i-αppli programs, talk on the videophone, watch 1Seg programs and so on for a long time during charging.

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to a docomo service counter, a docomo agent or a recycle center.	♻ Li-ion 00

Charging

●For details, refer to the instruction manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (option), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (option), and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (option).

●The FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports 100 V AC only. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use support from 100 V AC through 240 V AC.

●The shape of the plug for the AC adapter is for 100 V AC (for domestic use). To use the AC adapter that supports from 100 V AC through 240 V AC overseas, you need to have a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of the country you stay. Do not use a transformer for overseas travel to charge the battery pack.

●Even during charging, you can still answer calls if the FOMA terminal is turned on. This will consume the charged amount so that charging will take longer. Also, the standby time or talk time might be shorter if you charge the battery pack with your FOMA terminal open.

●If you have a long time videophone call during charging, the temperature in the FOMA terminal may rise and charging may be suspended. In such a case, wait for a while and try charging again.

●Remove and insert the connector slowly and carefully, without using unnecessary force.

●Do not remove the battery pack during charging.

Do not charge for long periods of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.

●If you leave the FOMA terminal powered on for long periods of time during charging, you may not be able to use the FOMA terminal for long duration as expected and the low battery alarm may sound soon, because the FOMA terminal receives the power from the battery pack after charging is completed. If this happens, charge the battery pack correctly. When charging the battery pack again, first remove the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again.

Estimated usable time for battery pack (The usable time for the battery pack varies with the charging time and the remaining life of the battery pack.)

Continuous standby time	FOMA/3G	3G/GSM setting [3G]	In motion: Approx. 370 hours
		3G/GSM setting [Auto]	Standstill: Approx. 600 hours In motion: Approx. 360 hours
	GSM	3G/GSM setting [Auto]	Standstill: Approx. 250 hours
Continuous talk time	FOMA/3G		Voice call: Approx. 200 minutes Videophone call: Approx. 110 minutes
	GSM		Voice call: Approx. 250 minutes
1Seg watching time			Approx. 260 minutes (In ECO Mode: Approx. 410 minutes)

※ The continuous talk time is the estimated time that the FOMA terminal can be used for calls with radio waves can be sent and received normally.

※ The 1Seg watching time is the estimated time for when radio waves can be received normally with the Stereo Earphone Set 01 (option) connected.

※ The continuous standby time is the estimated time when radio waves can be received normally. The standby time and talk/communication time could be about half of the estimate and 1Seg watching time could be shorter depending on the charge level of the battery pack, function settings, other ambient conditions such as temperature, and the status of radio waves in the area (weak or no radio waves, for instance). When you use i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter. Further, even if you do not make calls or not execute i-mode communication, the talk/communication time and standby time will be shorter if you watch 1Seg programs, compose i-mode mail, start up a downloaded i-αppli program or the i-αppli Stand-by display, execute data communication or Multiaccess, use the camera, play back music, or use Bluetooth connections.

※ The continuous talk time and the continuous standby time may be shortened depending on the network environment in the country you stay.

※ The continuous standby time for standstill is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA terminal in standstill status when it is closed and can receive radio waves normally.

※ The continuous standby time for in motion is the average number of hours you can use the FOMA terminal in the combined status of "standstill" "moving" and "out of the service area" when it is closed, in an area where it can receive radio waves normally.
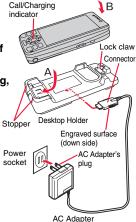
Estimated time for charging battery pack

AC adapter	Approx. 120 minutes	DC adapter	Approx. 120 minutes

※The charging time is an estimate of time for when empty battery pack is charged with the FOMA terminal turned off. The charging time will be longer if you charge the battery pack with the power of the FOMA terminal turned on.

Charge with AC Adapter and Desktop Holder

1 Plug the connector of AC Adapter horizontally with its engraved side facing down into the connector terminal of the Desktop Holder.

2 Pull out the AC Adapter's plug, and plug it into a household power socket of 100 V AC.

Call/Charging indicator
B
Lock claw
Connector
A
Stopper Desktop Holder
Engraved surface (down side)
Power socket
AC Adapter's plug
AC Adapter

3 Put the bottom of the FOMA terminal into the stopper of the desktop holder (A) to fit the head to the lock claw, and then depress the FOMA terminal until it clicks (B).

Check that the Call/Charging indicator lights in red.
When the Call/Charging indicator flickers, dismount the AC adapter and battery pack from the FOMA terminal and then re-mount them for charging.
If the symptom persists, troubles with the AC adapter, desktop holder or battery pack may be involved, so consult a handling counter such as a docomo shop.
≥The charging confirmation tone (see page 107) sounds when charging starts and ends. However, it does not sound when the power is off or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).
≥Be sure to set the FOMA terminal firmly onto the desktop holder. Also, be careful that the connector cover or a commercial strap is not caught between the FOMA terminal and desktop holder.

4 When charging is completed, hold the desktop holder with fingers and lift up the head of FOMA terminal to remove.

≥Unplug the AC adapter from the power socket when you are not going to use it for a long time.

■**Indicator and display during charging and when charging is completed**

	Call/Charging indicator	" " display
Charging	Lights in red	Blinks
Charging completed	Off	Lights

≥When the FOMA terminal is turned off, " " does not appear.
If you start charging with the battery flat, the Call/Charging indicator might not light immediately; however, charging itself has started.

■**Stand**
≥Standing up the desktop holder to put the FOMA terminal with a slope makes easier to watch 1Seg programs, etc. For details, refer to the instruction manual for the desktop holder.

When charging only with the AC adapter

Insert the connector with the engraved surface facing up until it clicks. Pull straight the connector out while pressing the release buttons.
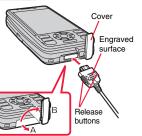
● To charge the battery, place the cover of the connector terminal as illustrated. Pull out the cover of the connector terminal to direction A, and turn it as direction B.

※ Check the facing direction (front or rear) of the AC adapter plug and then insert or pull it horizontally into or out of the FOMA terminal.
Malfunction could result if you try to pull it forcibly.

Cover

Engraved surface

Release buttons

■**DC adapter (option)**

With the DC adapter, you can use a cigarette lighter socket (12 V/24 V) of cars to charge the FOMA terminal with the battery pack attached.

For details, refer to the instruction manual for the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02.

Information

● If the fuse blows off when charging with the DC adapter, be sure to use a 2A fuse. The 2A fuse is consumables, so purchase at auto parts stores in your neighborhood.

<Battery Level>
Checking Battery Level

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, an estimate of the battery level is indicated by the icon.

・**Almost full** . . . .

・**Getting low** . . . .

・**Almost empty** . . . .

● Charge the battery when it is almost empty.

Check by Display and Tone

You can check an estimate of the battery level by the display and sound.

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Other settings**▶**Battery** ▶**Battery level**

Almost full Three beeps	Getting low Two beeps	Almost empty One beep
Full charge	Partial charge	Low charge

※ Almost empty. Charge the battery.

● The pictogram disappears in about three seconds.

When the battery is running out

The display on the right appears and the low battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds. To stop this alarm, press any key other than ▲ and ▼. About one minute later, the FOMA terminal will be turned off.

● During a call, a beeping tone from the earpiece notifies you of the low battery. About 20 seconds later your call will be cut and then one minute later the FOMA terminal will be turned off.

EMPTY

Recharge battery

Recharge Battery display

\<Power ON/OFF\>
Turning Power ON/OFF

Turn Power On

1 **Press and hold 🔚 for at least one second.**

After the Wake-up display (see page 112) is displayed, the Stand-by display appears.

- ●If you have stored many Phonebook entries or mail messages, it may take a while for the display to appear.
- ●If Set Time is set, the current date and time are shown.
- ●When "📷" is displayed, the FOMA terminal is out of the service area or in the place where the radio waves do not reach. Move to a location where "📷" disappears.
- ●If "Starting System Wait a minute" is displayed when you turn on the power, wait for a while and then proceed.

11/18 (Wed) 10:00

Stand-by display

When your UIM is replaced (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit Terminal Security Code after turning on the power. When you enter the correct Terminal Security Code, the Stand-by display appears. If you enter the incorrect Terminal Security Code five times in succession, the power turns off. (However, you can turn on the power again.)

When "PIN1 code entry set" of "UIM setting" is set to "ON"

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN1 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN1 code, the Stand-by display appears. See page 122 for PIN1 code.

When "Auto reset setting" of "Notice call cost" is set to "ON" (except during Omakase Lock)

Enter the four- to eight-digit PIN2 code after you turn on the power. When you enter the correct PIN2 code, the Stand-by display appears. If you press 🔘 or 🔚 without entering the correct PIN2 code, "Auto reset setting" is set to "OFF" and the Stand-by display appears. See page 122 for PIN2 code.

Check Welcome Mail

The mail messages "Welcome ✧✧ デコメアニメ ☆ 🗐 (Welcome ✧✧ Decome-Anime ☆ 🗐)" and "緊急速報「エリアメール」のご案内 (Introduction of Early Warning "Area Mail")" have been saved by default. Press 🔘 twice or perform step 1 on page 160 to show the Inbox list.

Information

- ●Each entry display appears in the order of "PIN1 code" → "Terminal Security Code" → "PIN2 code".

Turn Power Off

1 **Press and hold 🔚 for at least two seconds.**

The exit display appears and the power turns off.

- ●You cannot turn on the power immediately after turning off the power. Wait a few seconds.

\<Select Language\>   MENU①⑤
Switching to English Display

1 **MENU▶設定／サービス (Set./Service) ▶ディスプレイ (Display)▶バイリンガル (Select language) ▶Japanese (日本語) or English (英語)**

- ●The following functions are different between Japanese display and English display:

Functions	Japanese	English
"Clock" of Display Setting → "Stand-by clock" → "Day of week"	Available	Not available
使いかたナビ (Guide)	Available	Not available
Voice Guidance	Available	Not available

Information

- ●When you insert the UIM, the "バイリンガル (Select language)" setting is stored on the UIM.

<Initial Setting>
Configuring Initial Setting

If the date and time, Terminal Security Code, Keypad Sound, Speed Selector Sound, Location Request Set., or Font Size is not set, the Initial Setting display appears when you turn on the power. You can set the initial settings also from each menu function separately.

1 Turn on the power▶YES

●When the display for entering your Terminal Security Code, PIN1 code, or PIN2 code appears, follow the operation on page 43.

```
Initial setting
      ?
    Start
initial setting
     OK?

     YES
     NO
```

2 Set the date and time.
You can select "Auto time adjust ON" or "Auto time adjust OFF" for setting the time. (See page 44)

3 Set your Terminal Security Code.
You can set your Terminal Security Code required for setting functions. (See page 122)
1. Enter "0000"▶Enter your new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits) ▶YES

4 Set Keypad Sound.
You can set whether to make a keypad sound. (See page 107)

5 Set Speed Selector Sound.
You can set the sound for when you rotate the speed selector. (See page 107)

6 Set Location Request Set..
You can set whether to notify your current location for when a GPS location provision request arrives. (See page 338)

7 Set the size of characters.
You can set the size of characters on the display at a time. (See page 119)

Information

●When an unset function is found, the Initial Setting display for the unset function appears each time you turn on the power.
●The completed settings are valid even when total setting is interrupted by an incoming call or canceled by pressing 🔚 or [CLR] midway.
●When the power is automatically turned on by alarm notification, the Initial Setting display does not appear even if there is any unset function.
●When you finish the initial settings, the confirmation display appears telling that updating software is executed automatically. This display appears only at the first time, and after that, does not appear until you execute Reset Settings or Initialize.

<Set Time>
MENU 3 1
Setting Date and Time

You can select whether to correct the time automatically or set it manually. The time is set/displayed on the 24-hour basis.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Clock▶Set time ▶Auto time adjust ON or Auto time adjust OFF

Auto time adjust ON
. . . . Corrects the date/time automatically. The setting is completed. When the time cannot be corrected automatically such as when "🔳" is displayed and the date/time has not been set, the Manual Time Setting display appears. Follow step 2 to set the date/time.

Auto time adjust OFF
. . . . Sets the date/time manually.
●When "Notice call cost" is set to "ON", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

2 **Enter year, month, date and time.**

Use 🔘 to move the cursor and enter numbers by the numeric keys.

```
∕Manual time setting

(Year)❷0 0 9
(Date)1 1∕1 8
(Time)1 0：0 0
(Time zone)
         Japan(GMT+9)
```

●To enter one-digit numeral for the date and time, enter two digits beginning with "0" as in "01" through "09".
●Highlight "Time zone" and press ⊠(Edit) to set the time zone. Use 🔘 to select a region and press (●)(Select).

About date/time correction function

This function corrects the time of the FOMA terminal according to the clock information obtained from the network when you turn on the power.

The time is corrected when you show the Stand-by display with "Auto time adjust ON" set.

If the time is not corrected for a while after you turn on the power, turn it off and then on again.

●Some few second errors might occur. You might not be able to correct the time depending on the radio wave conditions, or the i-αppli program set for the i-αppli Stand-by display.
●When you receive the clock information overseas and the time difference correction information differs from the previously received one, "Time is adjusted" is displayed and the time difference is corrected automatically. Press "OK" to update the time and show Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, sent/received mail messages and others in local time.
●Depending on the network overseas, the time difference might not be correctly adjusted. In such a case, set a time zone manually.

Information

●Unless Set Time is set, the functions which use the clock such as Schedule do not work correctly. Further, the date/time for redial items and received call records are not stored.
●The set time is retained even when the battery pack is replaced, however, it might be reset if the battery pack is left removed for a long time. In that case, charge the FOMA terminal and then perform the clock setting.
●When "Time zone" is set to other than "GMT +9" or the time difference is corrected overseas, the sub clock (Japanese date/time, etc.) is displayed on the Stand-by display.
●This function supports clock settings from 00:00 on January 1, 2008 through 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

<World Time Watch>
Displaying World Time

You can display the time of the specified area on the Stand-by display.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Clock**▶**World time watch**
▶**ON or OFF**
▶**Use 🔘 to select an area and press (●)(Select).**

Information

●World Time Watch does not appear when "Display setting" → "Clock" → "Stand-by clock" → "Position" is set to "OFF", or when you use the FOMA terminal overseas.

Summer Time

You can advance the time displayed for the overseas country you stay and for a region of World Time Watch by one hour.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Clock**▶**Summer time**▶**ON or OFF**

<Caller ID Notification>
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

You can set the FOMA terminal to send your phone number to the called party's phone when dialing. Your phone number is important information, so take utmost care when notifying your phone number. This function is available only when the other party's phone supports Caller ID.

Set Caller ID Notification to Network   MENU 1 7

You can set whether to notify your caller ID on the network.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶NW services▶Caller ID notification
▶Do the following operations.

Activate	▶ON or OFF
Check setting	You can check the setting contents of "Activate".

<Own Number>   MENU O
Checking Your Own Phone Number

≥Your phone number (own number) is stored on the UIM.

1 MENU▶Phonebook▶Own number

You can press ◯ to switch the tabs.
≥See page 414 for storing/displaying personal data.

List tab
Phone number tab
Own number
090XXXXXXXX

Own Number display

Information

≥In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can switch between Number A and Number B by pressing
◯(Change) from the Own Number display. " " appears for Number A, and " "
appears for Number B.
≥When you replace a UIM with another one while using 2in1, 2in1 Setting is
deactivated. For using 2in1, activate 2in1 Setting.

Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

Videophone Calls

You and the other party can talk viewing each other's images.
DOCOMO videophones conform to 3G-324M, standardized by the international standard 3GPP. You cannot connect to the videophone that uses a different format.

●**3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project):**
This is the regional standards organization for developing common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

●**3G-324M:**
This is the international standard for the third generation of mobile videophones.

●P-02A supports only 64 kbps communication speed of the videophone.
You cannot talk on the videophone at 32 kbps communication speed.

■**Display during videophone calls**

❶…Received image (The other party's image through the camera or substitute image)
❷…Sent image (Image through your camera or substitute image)
❸…Call duration
❹…Status

🅰 : Voice sending/receiving	🕯 : Portrait
🅰 (gray): Voice sending/ receiving failed※1	🔍 : Close-up
	🏔 : Landscape
🆅 : Image sending/receiving	🌙 : Night Mode
🆅 (gray): Image sending/ receiving failed※2	📺 : Chara-den Whole Action Mode
📷 : Camera image sending	👤 : Chara-den Parts Action Mode
🖼 : Still image sending	1₂₃ : DTMF Transmission Mode
🎭 : Chara-den talking	
🔊 : Hands-free activated	
🔗 : AV output	
🅱 : Bluetooth communicating	

①
②
③   15 s
④

※1 When voice sending fails, the other party cannot hear your voice.
When voice receiving fails, you cannot hear the other party's voice.
※2 When image sending fails, the sent image is not displayed at the other end.
When image receiving fails, the received image is not displayed.
When voice or image sending/receiving fails, it does not recover automatically. You need to make a videophone call again.

48

Making a Call/Videophone Call
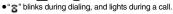
1 Enter the other party's phone number, starting with the city code.

●When 27 or more digits are entered, the lower 26 digits only are displayed.
●To store an entered phone number in the Phonebook, press (｢ Store ｣). Go to step 2 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 93.
●Even when you are dialing within the same area, you need to enter the city code before the phone number.

2 When Making a Voice Call
Press 📞 or ⬤ (｢ Dial ｣).

●"📶" blinks during dialing, and lights during a call.

When Making a Videophone Call

Press ⊠(V. phone).

●"█" blinks during dialing and lights during the call.
●Press MENU during a videophone call to switch between the image through your camera and substitute image for sending to the other party.

The digital communication charging starts from this display.

3 Press ⌐ to end the call after talking.

Information

●If you hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 446), follow the steps of "To notify your caller ID" on page 57 to enter "186" and redial.
●When an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you can hear the other party's voice from the earphone. (See page 419)
●If you close the FOMA terminal during a call, the FOMA terminal works in accordance with the setting of "Setting when closed". (See page 65)
●You can press numeric keys to send touch-tone signals during a call. During a Chara-den call, you need to switch to DTMF Transmission Mode. (See page 73)
●In Dual Mode of 2in1, you can make a call after selecting Number A or Number B. (See page 452)

Information

<For Voice Calls>

●You can make a voice call also by pressing ⌐ and then entering the party's phone number. If you enter a wrong number, press ⌐ to clear the display and then redial.

<For Videophone Calls>

●Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ V. phone". (See page 74) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ V. phone".
●When you make a videophone call with substitute image, note that you will still be charged for the digital communication, not the voice calls.
●If you make a videophone call at 110/119/118 from the FOMA terminal, it is automatically dialed out as a voice call.
●During a videophone call, you can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 71)
●The international videophone call is available using the DOCOMO international call service "WORLD CALL". (See page 58)

Display when dialing

The other party's name and icon are displayed if the party's phone number and name are stored in the Phonebook. However, the image is not displayed even if it is stored in the Phonebook.

●If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 94) is displayed.
●The phone number instead of the name is displayed when you make a call during Personal Data Lock or to the party stored as secret data in the Phonebook.

If you entered a wrong phone number

Each time you press CLR, the digit on the far right is cleared. If you press and hold CLR for at least one second, all the digits are cleared and the Stand-by display returns.

●Press ⦿ to move the cursor to the digit you want to clear, and then press CLR to clear it. To clear all the digits on and to the right of the cursor, press and hold CLR for at least one second.

49

If a videophone call could not be connected

The reason why it could not be connected is displayed. (The displayed reason might not be the same as the actual reason depending on the type of the other party's phone and contract for network services.)

Messages	Reasons
Check number, then redial	You have dialed a non-existent phone number.
Busy	The other party is busy. (Depending on the receiver's phone, this message might be displayed during packet communication as well.)
Busy with packet transmission	The packet communication is progress at the other end.
Out of service area/power off	The other party's phone is out of the service area or turned off.
Set caller ID to ON	Your caller ID is not notified. (when dialing "visualnet", etc.)
Your call is being forwarded	During forwarding
Redial using voice call	The other party activates Call Forwarding Service but the forwarding destination phone does not support videophone calls.
Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed	The upper limit for the plan with the limit function (Type Limit, Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You did not make a videophone call from the IP (Information Provider) site among i-mode official sites (at dialing to V-live).
Connection failed	Redial after setting "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" to "ON". ● This may appear in the case other than above.

Auto-redialing

If "Voice call auto redial" is set to "ON", and a videophone call is not connected, a voice call is automatically made.
● Videophone calls cannot be connected to the phones that do not support the videophone function, or to the phones that are out of the service area or turned off even if they are videophones. If you have set "Voice call auto redial" to "ON" and attempt to dial a phone that does not have the videophone function, the number will be redialed as a voice call. However, this operation might not work if you call the phone connected with ISDN-synchronous 64K or the ISDN videophone that does not support 3G-324M (as of December 2008), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that you could be charged for the communication.

Function Menu while Entering Phone Number

Notify caller ID	See page 56.
Prefix numbers	See page 60.
Int'l dial assist	See page 59.
Select image	See page 75.
Multi number	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 449.)
Add to phonebook	See page 92.
Compose message	You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 142.
Chaku-moji	See page 55.
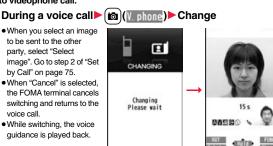
Switching a Voice/Videophone Call

You (caller) can switch between a voice call and a videophone call. This function is available for the mobile phones that can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

Switch from a Voice Call to a Videophone Call

When the other party's phone has a function to switch between the calls, "V.phone" is displayed on your phone and you can switch from the voice call to videophone call.

1 During a voice call▶ (V.phone)▶Change

- ●When you select an image to be sent to the other party, select "Select image". Go to step 2 of "Set by Call" on page 75.
- ●When "Cancel" is selected, the FOMA terminal cancels switching and returns to the voice call.
- ●While switching, the voice guidance is played back.

Switch from a Videophone Call to a Voice Call
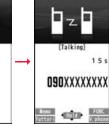
When the other party's phone has a function to switch between calls, you can switch from the videophone call to a voice call by selecting "CHG to voice call" from the Function menu.

**1 During a videophone call▶ (FUNC)
▶CHG to voice call▶YES**

- ●Select "NO" on the confirmation display to stop switching and to resume the videophone call.
- ●While switching, the voice guidance is played back.

Information

- ●You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call repeatedly.
- ●When i-mode or packet communication is in progress, the communication is disconnected and then the voice call is switched to the videophone call.
- ●When packet communication is in progress at the other end, the message to the effect that the communication cannot be switched is displayed and the voice call continues without switching to the videophone call.
- ●You cannot switch from a voice call to a videophone call while "Multi calling" is displayed during a call if you have signed up for Call Waiting Service.
- ●It takes about five seconds to switch. Switching may take a longer time depending on the radio wave conditions.
- ●Depending on how the caller's phone is working or on the radio wave conditions, switching between a voice call and a videophone call may fail and the connection may be cut off.
- ●If you switch between a voice call and a videophone call during a call, the call duration and call cost are counted respectively for each call. You are not charged while "Changing" is displayed.
- ●You cannot switch between a videophone call and a voice call unless "Notify switchable mode" on page 76 is set to "Indication ON" at the other end.
- ●When you switch from a videophone call to a voice call, Hands-free is deactivated.

<Redial> <Dialed Calls> <Received Calls>

Using Call Records

The FOMA terminal can store the other party's phone number and date/time you have dialed or received. You can call back to the other party.

■Redial

Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and the older record of dialing to the same phone number is deleted. However, the dialing by PushTalk is retained in Redial separately from that of the voice call or videophone call even if you dial to the same phone number.

■Dialed Calls

Up to 30 records of dialed voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records of dialing to the same phone number are also retained.

■Received Calls

Up to 30 records of incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls are stored in total, and up to 30 records of 64K data and packet communications are stored in total as well. The older records coming from the same phone number are also retained.

- ●When a call is switched between a voice call and a videophone call, the call that is dialed/received first is stored.
- ●When more than 30 calls are dialed, the older records are automatically deleted. Even if you turn off the FOMA terminal, call records are not deleted.
- ●In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 redial items, 120 dialed call records, and 120 received call records for Number A and Number B are stored in total.

■Icons for Redial, Dialed Calls, and Received Calls

⑨⋆PHONE / ⑨⋆MISS ※	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of voice call
⑼⋆PHONE / ⑼⋆MISS ※	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of videophone call
⑥⋆⑦⋆ / ⑥⋆MISS ※	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of PushTalk
⑥⋆⑦⋆ / ⑥⋆MISS ※	Dialed and received group calls/missed group calls of PushTalk
⑥⋆⑦⋆ / ⑥⋆MISS ※	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of PushTalk via server's phonebook
MSG	Voice/Video messages are recorded on Record Message
REMOTE	Incoming calls of Remote Monitoring
⑨⋆PHONE / ⑨⋆MISS ※	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of international call
⑼⋆PHONE / ⑼⋆MISS ※	Dialed and received calls/missed calls of international videophone call
■⋆	Dialed calls of 64K data communication

■⋆64K / ■⋆MISS ※	Received calls/missed calls of 64K data communication
■ ■⋆	Dialed calls of packet communication
■⋆PACKET / ■⋆MISS ※	Received calls/missed calls of packet communication
NO CONNECT	Received calls of 64K data communication and packet communication when no external device is connected
✎	Received Chaku-moji message
●🕐	Records with time difference corrected
■B	Records for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

※ The unchecked missed call icons are highlighted.

Use Redial/Dialed Calls

1
When Using Redial

Press ○.

When Using Dialed Calls

[MENU]▶**Phonebook**▶**Dialed/recv. calls**
▶**Dialed calls**

The list for call records is displayed.

- ●For redial items of PushTalk, press ● (Select) to show the Redial list of the group. Highlight a party and press ⑤ to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press ⑤, you can make a group call.
- ●Press [MENU] (Change) to display the Sent Address list.

For Redial

2 Select a call record.

The detailed display for the call record is displayed.

- ●When the other party is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed. If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in the search order (see page 94) are displayed.

For Redial

52

Use Received Calls

1 Press ◎.

- You can display the Received Call list also by
[MENU]▶Phonebook▶Dialed/recv. calls▶Received calls
▶All calls or Missed calls.

  All calls . . . . . . All the records including missed calls
  Missed calls. . . The records of missed calls only
  In Dual Mode of 2in1, the number of missed calls for
  Number A and Number B is displayed respectively.

  (If unchecked missed calls are found, the number of them is displayed.)

- For received call records of PushTalk, press ◎(Select) to show the Received
Call list of the group with "★" mark added to the caller. Highlight a party and
press 🔟 to make a PushTalk call. If you do not highlight any party and press 🔟,
you can make a group call.
- Press [MENU](Change) to display the Received Address list.

Received calls 1/2
11/18 10:00
03XXXXXXXX
11/18 9:50
DOCOMO Taro
11/18 9:30
DOCOMO Jiro
11/18 9:20
090XXXXXXXX

Received Call list

2 Select a received call record.

- The other party's phone number is displayed if it is
provided. If this caller is stored in the Phonebook, the
phone number, name, and icon are displayed.
If the same phone number is stored with multiple names
in the Phonebook, the name and icon that come first in
search order (see page 94) are displayed. If there is a
call for packet communication, the sender's access
point name (APN) is displayed.

  When the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is
displayed.

- For missed calls, the ring time is displayed on the right of the received date/time.
- When a Chaku-moji message is received, it is displayed.

Received calls 2/7
11/18(Wed) 9:50

DOCOMO Taro

090XXXXXXXX

Detailed Received
Call display

To make a call to a displayed redial item, dialed call record, or received call record

Press 📞 to make a voice call. You can make a voice call also by pressing
◎(Dial) from the detailed display. Press 📧(V.phone) to make a videophone call
and press 🔟 to make a PushTalk call.

Information

- You can make a voice call to the most recently dialed or received number by pressing
📞 from the Stand-by display and then ◎.
- When you make/receive a call with an additional number of Multi Number, the stored
name for the additional number is displayed below the phone number on the detailed
display. If you store a phone number for "Number setting" of "Multi number", the
phone number is displayed as well.
- Dialed call records of 64K data communication are not stored when you use a
Bluetooth device.
- Even if you make a voice call (or videophone call) to the phone number in a received
call record with a Chaku-moji message displayed, the received message is not sent.
- When a call comes in from a party who uses a dial-in phone number, a different
phone number might be displayed.

Function Menu while Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls is Displayed

Notify caller ID	See page 56.
Prefix numbers	See page 60.
Int'l dial assist	See page 59.
Select image	See page 75.
2in1 dial	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 452)
Multi number	You can select a phone number to notify the other party. (See page 449)
Chaku-moji	See page 55.
Search location	You can access the site of "イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadoco kantan search)". ▶YES
Add to phonebook	See page 92. - You can store the phone number in the Phonebook also by pressing [MENU](Store) from the detailed display. Go to step 2 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 93.
Add to PushTalk	
Store in P-Talk PB	▶YES

Store P-Talk group	▶**Select a group.**
	●When members who are not stored in the PushTalk Phonebook are found, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them.
	▶**Enter a group name.**
	●You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters.

Mail

| Compose message | You can compose a mail message to send to the phone number set as the destination address.
Go to step 3 on page 142. |
| Compose SMS | You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address.
Go to step 3 on page 186. |

| Ring time
[Received Call list only] | You can display the ring time for missed calls. Even if you have set "Missed calls display" of "Ring time" to "Not display", the missed calls which stopped ringing within the ring start time and their ring times are displayed. |

| Font size | You can switch font sizes for Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, and Received Address. (See "Dialed/recv. calls" on page 120) |

| Add desktop icon | See page 31. |

| Sent address
[Redial/Dialed Calls only] | See page 171. |

| Received address
[Received Calls only] | See page 171. |

Delete

Delete this	▶**YES**
Delete selected	▶**Put a check mark for redial items, dialed call records, or received call records to be deleted**▶ ⌨(**Finish**)▶**YES**
Delete all	▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

Information

<**Store in P-Talk PB**>
●You cannot store from the call record for the party who is not stored in the Phonebook.

Information

<**Store P-Talk group**>
●You cannot store in a PushTalk group unless all the members are stored in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.

<**Delete**>
●If you execute "Delete all" from the Function menu of Redial/Dialed Calls, all records in both Redial and Dialed Calls are deleted. Even if you execute "Delete this" or "Delete selected" of Redial, the records are not deleted from Dialed Calls and they are retained. To delete the dialed call records, delete them from the Function menu while "Dialed calls" is displayed.

<Chaku-moji>
Using Chaku-moji

When making a voice call or videophone call, you can send your text message to tell the subject during calling.
●For details on Chaku-moji or compatible models, refer to DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
●The sending end is charged, but the receiving end is not charged.

When a message is received

A Chaku-moji message is displayed below a caller. The Chaku-moji message is stored in Received Calls as well.

●The Chaku-moji message is displayed only during ringing. It is not displayed during a call.
●Even when a Chaku-moji message comes in within the ring start time set by "Ring time", it is received and recorded in Received Calls.

090XXXXXXXX

🖉Meet at...

●The Chaku-moji message is not displayed during Lock All, Omakase Lock, or Personal Data Lock. However, you can check the Chaku-moji message from Received Calls after the lock is released.

Store Messages

You can store up to 10 Chaku-moji messages in the Message list.

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**NW services**▶**Chaku-moji**
▶**Create message**
▶**Highlight <Not stored> and press** [✉](Edit)
▶**Enter a message.**

●To edit a stored message, highlight it and press [✉](Edit).
●You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictograms, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters.

Make a Call with a Message

1 **Enter a phone number**
or
call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2 [≣⊠](FUNC)▶**Chaku-moji**▶**Do the following operations.**

Create message	You can create a Chaku-moji message just before dialing. ▶**Enter a message.** ●You can enter up to 10 characters regardless of whether they are pictograms, symbols, or full-pitch/half-pitch characters. ●The Chaku-moji message created using this function is not stored in the Message list.
Select message	From the Message list, you can select a stored message. ▶**Select a message.**
Sent messages	From the Sent Message list, you can select a Chaku-moji message to be sent. Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages only are stored in the Sent Message list. If you send the same Chaku-moji message, the older one also remains. When the number of sent Chaku-moji messages exceeds 10, the messages are deleted from the oldest one. ▶**Select a sent message.**

3 **Press** [☎] **or** [●](Dial).

●Press [✉](V.phone) to make a videophone call.
●The Chaku-moji message being sent is displayed while you are dialing.

Information

●When a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone, "Transmission completed" is displayed, and you are charged a transmission fee.
●When a Chaku-moji message does not arrive at the other party's phone such as when the other party's phone is not a Chaku-moji compatible mobile phone or the call is not allowed by "Message disp. settings" at the receiving end, "Transmission failed" is displayed. In this case, you are not charged a transmission fee.
●Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result may not be displayed at the sending end even if a Chaku-moji message has arrived at the other party's phone. In this case, you are charged a transmission fee.
●Even if you make a call sending a Chaku-moji message, the Chaku-moji message is not displayed and you are not charged a transmission fee (the call is not recorded in Received Calls at the receiving end) when the other party's phone is out of the service area, turned off, during Public Mode (Drive Mode), or the ring time for Record Message Setting is set to 0 seconds. Also, the transmission result is not displayed at the sending end.
●When a videophone call is not connected and automatically dialed as a voice call, the Chaku-moji message is resent as well.
●Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.
●You cannot send/receive Chaku-moji messages overseas.

Detailed Sent Message

Up to 10 sent Chaku-moji messages are stored in Sent Messages, and you can check for the other party's phone number and the date/time the Chaku-moji messages were sent. Older messages sent to the same phone number are also retained.

●In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 10 records for Number A and Number B can be displayed in total.

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**NW services**▶**Chaku-moji**▶**Sent messages**

OK .... Chaku-moji message successfully sent
NG .... Chaku-moji message unsuccessfully sent
B .... Chaku-moji message for Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)
●When the transmission result is not displayed, " OK " or " NG " is not displayed.
●Depending on the radio wave conditions, the transmission result might not be displayed correctly.

2 Select a sent message.

- When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the phone number, name, and icon are displayed.

```
A   Sent messages  1/7
11/18(Wed) 10:00
♪☆
Meet at...

[Receiver]

090XXXXXXXX
```

Function Menu while Detailed Sent Message is Displayed

Store	You can store a sent Chaku-moji message in the Message list.
	▶<Not stored>
	● You can store also by pressing ⊠(Store).
Delete this	▶YES
Delete all	▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

Message Display Settings

You can set how incoming Chaku-moji messages are displayed.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶NW services▶Chaku-moji
▶Message disp. settings▶Select an item.

Display all messages . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages from all callers.
Numbers stored in PB . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the callers stored in the Phonebook.
Calls with callerID . . . . Displays Chaku-moji messages only from the caller notifying his/her phone number.
Hide all messages . . . . Does not display Chaku-moji messages.

Information

● When you set to "Numbers stored in PB", you cannot receive Chaku-moji messages from the callers stored in the Phonebook B in A Mode of 2in1 (and vice versa).

Prefer Chaku-moji

You can set how your FOMA terminal works for incoming Chaku-moji messages for when "Setting when opened" is set to "Answer".

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶NW services▶Chaku-moji
▶Prefer Chaku-moji▶ON or OFF

ON . . . . Does not answer by opening the FOMA terminal during ringing, so you can check a Chaku-moji message.
OFF . . . Answers by opening the FOMA terminal while it is ringing.

<186/184>

Setting Caller ID to Send/Not to Send for Each Call

Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call

Each time you dial out, you can set whether to notify your caller ID.

1 Enter a phone number
or

call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2 (📞)(FUNC)▶Notify caller ID
▶Don't notify or Notify caller

● To release "Notify caller ID", select "Cancel prefix". Whether to notify or not follows the setting for "Activate" of "Caller ID notification".

Set "Notify/Not Notify" by Entering "186/184"

You can select whether to notify the other party of your phone number also by entering "186"/"184" before the other party's phone number.

To notify your caller ID

1 186→Destination phone number▶ (⌒) or (●)(Dial)

●Press (☒)(V.phone) to make a videophone call.

Not to notify your caller ID

1 184→Destination phone number▶ (⌒) or (●)(Dial)

●Press (☒)(V.phone) to make a videophone call.

Information

●When you make a call and hear the guidance requesting your caller ID (see page 446), follow the steps of "To notify your caller ID" to enter "186" and redial.
●When you make a PushTalk call, "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" or "Notify caller ID" is valid, but "notify/not notify" by adding "186"/"184" is invalid.
●You cannot set "Caller ID notification" while "🚫📵" is displayed.

<Pause Dial>

Sending Touch-tone Signals

You can send touch-tone signals from your FOMA terminal to use services such as reserving tickets, checking bank balance, etc.

Store Pause Dial

You need to store a number string to be sent as a touch-tone signal in the Pause Dial list. If you have inserted a pause (p), you can send a number string breaking at the point where the pause is inserted.

1 (MENU)▶Set./Service▶Other settings▶Pause dial ▶(☒)(Edit)

●When a number string is already stored, it is displayed.
●To delete a stored pause dial, press (🔊)(FUNC) and select "Delete", then select "YES".

2 Enter a number string.

●Enter the pause (p) by pressing and holding (✳) for at least one second.
●You can use only (0) through (9), (#), (✳) to enter a number string and the pause (p).
●You can enter up to 128 digits.
●You cannot enter a pause (p) at the beginning and end of a number string, or enter it consecutively.

Send Pause Dial

1 (MENU)▶Set./Service▶Other settings▶Pause dial ▶(●)(Send)▶Enter a phone number ▶ (⌒) or (●)(Dial)

A voice call is made. Once the line is connected, a number string stored in Pause Dial is displayed up to the first pause (p).

●When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing (🔄).
●You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing (🔄) or from Redial by pressing (🔄).

2 Check that the line is connected▶ 📞 or ⊙(Send)

A number string up to the first pause (p) is sent, and a number string up to the next pause (p) is displayed.

A number string up to the pause (p) is sent each time you press 📞 or ⊙(Send).

When you have finished sending the last number, the "Talking" display appears.

●To send multiple pieces of a number string at a time, press and hold ⊙ for at least one second, and select "Send at one time".

Information

●During a call, you can send a number string also by displaying the Function menu of the Pause Dial display.

●Some devices on the receiving end cannot receive signals.

●You cannot send a number string with pauses during a videophone call.

<WORLD CALL>
Making International Calls

WORLD CALL is the international call service available from DOCOMO mobile phones.

When you have signed up for FOMA service, you have contracted to use "WORLD CALL" (except those who have applied not to use it).

●You can call about 240 countries and regions.

●The WORLD CALL charges are added to your monthly FOMA bill.

●The application/monthly fee is free of charge.

●The service is not available with some billing plans.

●Contact "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual for inquiries about WORLD CALL.

●When using international carriers other than DOCOMO, contact them.

●The caller ID might not be notified, or might not be displayed correctly depending on the carrier. In this case, you cannot make a call by using Received Calls.

About international videophone calls

You can make international videophone calls to the other party who uses a specific 3G mobile phone overseas. Press ✉(V. phone) instead of 📞 or ⊙(Dial) in the steps of "Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call". (See page 58)

●For the information about connectable countries and telecommunications carriers, refer to the DOCOMO Global Service web page.

●Images sent from the other party may blur on your FOMA terminal or you may not be able to connect, depending on the other party's phone used for the international videophone call.

Use "+" to Make an International Call
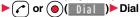
When you enter a phone number for dialing or storing it in the Phonebook, press and hold ⊙ for at least one second to enter "+". You can use "+" to make international calls without entering an international call access code.

●If you set "Auto assist setting" of "Int'l dial assist" to "ON", an international call access code of "IDD prefix setting" is automatically entered.

1 ⊙(for at least one second)
▶Enter numbers in order of country/area code
→area code (city code)→destination phone number
▶ 📞 or ⊙(Dial)▶Dial

●When the area code (city code) begins with "0", enter it except for the "0". However, include "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.

●Press ✉(V. phone) to make an international videophone call.

●When you select "Dial with orig. No.", you can make a call without adding an international call access code.

Enter a Phone Number to Make an International Call

1 Enter numbers in order of 010→country/area code
→area code (city code)→destination phone number
▶ 📞 or ⊙(Dial)

●You can make an international call also by entering 009130→010
→country code/area code→area code (city code)→destination phone number.

●When the area code (city code) begins with "0", enter it except for the "0". However, include "0" when making a call to some countries or regions such as Italy.

●Press ✉(V. phone) to make an international videophone call.

International Dial Assist

You can make a call adding a country/area code or international call access code to a phone number. (Except for some countries and regions, if the phone number starts with "0", the "0" at the beginning is automatically deleted.)

1 Enter a phone number
or

call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2 [ⅰ☆](FUNC)▶Int'l dial assist
▶Select a country/area name
▶Select a name of International call access code
▶[ｃ] or [◉](Dial)

≥Press [⊠](V.phone) to make an international videophone call.
≥When the beginning of the phone number is "+", the display for selecting a country/area name is not displayed.
≥When "Japan" is selected as a country/area name, the display for selecting a name of International call access code is not displayed.

＜International Dial Assist＞
Setting for International Calls

Auto Assist Setting

You can set whether to replace "+" at the beginning of a phone number with an international call access code for when you make an international call from Japan.

1 [MENU]▶Set./Service▶Network setting▶Int'l dial assist
▶Auto assist setting▶ON or OFF
▶Select a country/area name
▶Select a name of International call access code.

≥When no country/area code or international call access code is stored, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store it. Select "YES" and go to step 2 of "Country/Area Code" on page 59 for a country/area code, and go to step 2 of "IDD Prefix Setting" on page 59 for an international call access code.

Country/Area Code

You can store up to 27 country/area codes to be added for making international calls from overseas.

1 [MENU]▶Set./Service▶Network setting▶Int'l dial assist
▶Country/Area Code
▶Highlight ＜Not recorded＞ and press [⊠](Edit).

≥If you select a stored country/area name, you can check the stored contents.

2 Enter a country/area name ▶Enter a country/area code.

≥You can enter a country/area name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
≥You can enter a country/area code of up to 5 digits. But you cannot use #, ⅹ, and +.

IDD Prefix Setting

You can store up to three international call access codes to be added to the beginning of a phone number for making an international call.

1 [MENU]▶Set./Service▶Network setting▶Int'l dial assist
▶IDD prefix setting
▶Highlight ＜Not recorded＞ and press [⊠](Edit).

≥If you select the stored item, you can check the stored contents.

2 Enter a name▶Enter an international call access code.

≥You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
≥You can enter an international call access code of up to 16 digits.

Function Menu while Country/Area Code /IDD Prefix Setting is Displayed

Edit	Go to step 2 of "Country/Area Code" on page 59 for Country/Area Code, and go to step 2 of "IDD Prefix Setting" on page 59 for IDD Prefix Setting. ≥You can edit the item also by pressing [⊠](Edit).
Delete this	**▶YES**

Delete all	▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

Information

<**Delete this**> <**Delete all**>
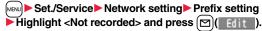
●You cannot delete the country/area code or international call access code set by "Auto assist setting".

<Prefix Setting>
Storing Numbers to be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number

You can store prefix numbers such as international call access codes or "186"/"184" and add them to the phone number for dialing. You can store up to seven prefix numbers.

1 **[MENU]**▶**Set./Service**▶**Network setting**▶**Prefix setting**▶**Highlight <Not recorded> and press [☒](Edit).**

●If you select a stored prefix, you can check the stored contents.
●To delete a stored prefix, press [i α](FUNC) and select "Delete this" or "Delete all" then select "YES". If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.

2 **Enter a name**▶**Enter a prefix number.**

●You can enter a name of up to 8 full-pitch/16 half-pitch characters.
●You can enter a prefix number of up to 16 digits. The keys for entry are limited to [0] through [9], [#] and [※].

Prefix Numbers

You can add a prefix number to the beginning of phone number when you make a call.

1 **Enter a phone number**
or
call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2 **[i α](FUNC)**▶**Prefix numbers**▶**Select a name**▶**[c] or [●](Dial)**

●Press [☒](V.phone) to make a videophone call and press [ⓑ] to make a PushTalk call.
●For making a PushTalk call, adding a prefix number such as "186" or "184" to the beginning of the phone number is disabled.

<Sub-address Setting>
Making a Call Specifying a Sub-address

You can set whether to regard the numbers after "※" of a phone number as a sub-address to access the specified phones or data terminals.

●The sub-address is a number assigned to identify each ISDN terminal connected to an ISDN line. It is also used for selecting contents on "V-live".

1 **[MENU]**▶**Set./Service**▶**Other settings**▶**Sub-address setting**▶**ON or OFF**

Information

●Even if you set "Sub-address setting" to "ON", "※" at the top of phone numbers and "※" immediately after the prefix number or "186"/"184" are not regarded as sub-address mark-off symbols.

<Reconnect Signal>   [MENU] [7] [7]
Setting Alarm for Reconnecting

You can set an alarm that sounds until a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication is reconnected after disconnected owing to bad radio wave conditions.

1 **[MENU]**▶**Set./Service**▶**Talk**▶**Reconnect signal**▶**Select an alarm.**

Information

● The reconnectable time differs depending on the usage status and radio wave conditions. An estimate is about 10 seconds and the call charge is applied also for that duration.

● While you are disconnected, no sound is transmitted to the other party.

<Shikkari Talk>
Making Voice Clear According to Surrounding Noise

The volume of the other party's voice is turned up according to the surrounding noise during a call. This setting is effective only when the other party's voice is output from the earpiece.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Talk**▶**Shikkari Talk**▶**ON or OFF**

<Noise Reduction>   MENU 7 6
Reducing Surrounding Noise to Make Voice Clear

The noise sent to the other party is reduced according to the surrounding noise during a call.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Talk**▶**Noise reduction**▶**ON or OFF**

<Yuttari Talk>
Slowing Down the Other Party's Speaking Speed

1 **During a voice call**▶MENU(**Yuttari**)

While Yuttari Talk is activated, "**ON**" is displayed.
● Press MENU(**Normal**) again to return to the normal speed.

Information

● Yuttari Talk is effective only during a current voice call. The speaking speed returns to normal one when you end the call, switch calling parties during Multi calling, or switch from the voice call to a videophone call.

<Hands-free>
Switching to Hands-free

When you switch to Hands-free, sound such as the other party's voice is audible over the speaker.

1 **During a call, dialing, or connecting**▶☎

When Hands-free is activated, "📢" is displayed.
● Press ☎ again to deactivate Hands-free.
● The sound volume during a Hands-free call follows the setting specified by "Volume" (earpiece volume).
● You can switch to Hands-free even during Manner Mode. Also, you will still hear voice through the speaker even when you activate Manner Mode during a Hands-free call.

Information

● While an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you cannot hear voice through the speaker even if you switch to Hands-free.

● Keep the FOMA terminal well away from your ear during a Hands-free call. Otherwise you could affect or damage your hearing.

● Talk into the FOMA terminal within a distance of about 50 cm.

<In-Car Hands-free>
Using Hands-free Compatible Devices

You can make or receive voice calls from a Hands-free compatible device such as In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option) or a car navigation system by connecting with your FOMA terminal.
You can connect your FOMA terminal to a Hands-free compatible device using two ways of connections as follows:

● **Connect using a cable (USB connection):**
  To use/charge via the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (option), you need to have the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (option).

● **Connect using Bluetooth (wireless):**
  To connect to a Bluetooth communication compatible Hands-free device, you need to register and connect it to the FOMA terminal.

※ For how to operate Hands-free compatible devices, refer to the respective instruction manuals.

Information

≥To connect using a cable (USB connection), set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode".

≥" " appears while you are talking or communicating using a USB Hands-free compatible device.

≥" " might appear while the FOMA terminal is connected to a USB Hands-free compatible device, and " " while "USB mode setting" is set to "microSD mode", depending on the Hands-free device connected.

≥The display or ring tone for incoming calls follows the settings of the FOMA terminal.

≥When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free compatible device, the ring tone sounds from that device even when Manner Mode is activated or "Ring volume" of the FOMA terminal is set to "Silent".

≥The receiving operation in Public Mode (Drive Mode) follows the setting of "Public (Drive) mode".

≥The receiving operation while Record Message is activated follows the setting of "Record message setting".

≥When the sound is set to output from the FOMA terminal, the operation for when the FOMA terminal is closed during a call follows the setting of "Setting when closed". When the sound is set to output from a Hands-free device, the communication state does not change regardless of "Setting when closed" even if you close the FOMA terminal.

Receiving a Call/Videophone Call

1 When you receive a call, the ring tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.

≥To vibrate the FOMA terminal for incoming calls, set "Phone" or "Videophone" of "Vibrator" to other than "OFF".

≥While the phone is ringing for a videophone call, "Incoming V.phone" is displayed. However, while ringing for a voice call, this kind of indication is not displayed.

≥" " is displayed at the upper left of the phone number for incoming international calls.

Chaku-moji message
(See page 54)

2 For Answering a Voice Call

Press ⌒ or ⬤ (Answer) to answer the call.

For Answering a Videophone Call
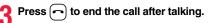
Press ⌒ or ⬤ (Answer) to answer the videophone call.

You can send the image through your camera to the other party.

When you press MENU (Subst.) to answer the videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party. (Substitute image answering)

≥Press MENU during a videophone call to switch between the image through your camera and substitute image for sending to the other party.

3 Press ⌒ to end the call after talking.

Information

≥If you close the FOMA terminal during a call, the FOMA terminal works in accordance with the setting of "Setting when closed". (See page 65)

Information

≥You might hear beeps (in-call ring tone) during a call.
If you have signed up for any of Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service, or Call Forwarding Service and set "Arrival call act" to "Answer", the beeps (in-call ring tone) will sound for another incoming call, enabling you to do the following operations:
Voice Mail Service
 . . . . Transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center. (See page 442)
Call Waiting Service
 . . . . Put your current call on hold and answer the incoming call. (See page 442)
Call Forwarding Service
 . . . . Transfer the call to the registered forwarding destination. (See page 445)

≥You can set "Reject unknown" not to accept calls from the phone numbers that are not stored in the Phonebook.

<For Videophone Calls>

≥Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated during a videophone call as "Hands-free w/ V. phone" has been set to "ON". (See page 74) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ V. phone".

≥Even if Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is not forwarded unless the forwarding destination is a phone compatible with the videophone conforming to 3G-324M (see page 48). Check the phone you are forwarding the call to and then activate the service. The videophone caller does not hear the guidance to the effect that the call is forwarded. (The message to the effect that the call is to be forwarded appears, depending on the receiver's FOMA terminal.)

≥If a videophone call comes in from the phone number to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the video guidance for Call Rejection is played back and the call is disconnected.

≥You can send a Chara-den image to the other party instead of the image through your camera. (See page 71)

Display for incoming calls

When a caller's phone number is provided

If you store the caller's name, phone number, and image in the Phonebook, the name, phone number, and icon (or image) are displayed.

≥If the same phone number is stored with multiple names in the Phonebook, the name that comes first in the search order (see page 94) is displayed.

≥The phone number but not the name is displayed during Personal Data Lock.

≥For a forwarded call, the forwarder's phone number is displayed below the caller. (It might not be displayed in the case of some forwarders.)

≥When you receive a call to an additional number of Multi Number, the stored name for the additional number is displayed below the caller. (With a forwarded call, you can press 📷 (⌜Change⌟) to switch to display of the forwarder.)

When a caller's phone number is not provided

The reason for no caller ID is displayed. (See page 135)

Function Menu while a Call is Ringing

Call rejection	You can disconnect the call without answering.
Call forwarding	See page 445.
Voice mail	See page 442.

Switched between a Call and a Videophone Call by the Other Party

When you have set "Notify switchable mode" to "Indication ON", a caller (the other party) can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

≥You (receiving end) cannot switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

Switched from a Voice Call to Videophone Call by the Other Party

1 The display for switching to a videophone call appears during a voice call.

- **YES** . . . Sends the image through your camera to the caller.
- **NO** . . . . Sends a pre-installed substitute image to the caller.
- ≥While switching, the message to that effect is displayed and the voice guidance is played back.

Switched from a Videophone Call to Voice Call by the Other Party

When the caller (the other party) switches a videophone call to a voice call, the message telling that the call is being switched appears, the voice guidance is played back, and then the call is switched to a voice call.

<Answer Setting>
MENU 5 8
Setting Response of Key Operation for Answering Incoming Calls

You can set to start talking (Any key answer) or to stop the ring tone (Quick silent) by pressing a key besides (⌀), (●), MENU (for videophone call), or ⓑ (for PushTalk call) for when a call or PushTalk call comes in.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Incoming call▶Answer setting ▶Select a key operation.

Any key answer
You can start talking by pressing any key shown below:

Voice call※1※2	(⌀), (●), (O) through (9), (✳), (#), (CLR), (MENU), (📷)※3, (O), (▲)
PushTalk call	(⌀), (●), (ⓑ), (O) through (9), (✳), (CLR), (✉), (📷), (O), (▲)

≥When receiving a videophone call, you can start talking by pressing (⌀), (●) or MENU.

Quick silent
The following are the keys you can press to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance:
When "Setting when opened" is set to "Keep ringing", you can open the FOMA terminal to stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance. Even if you stop it, the other party still hears a ringback tone.

Voice call※1※2	(O) through (9), (✳), (#), (CLR), (MENU), (📷)※3, (O), (▲)
Videophone call※2	(O) through (9), (✳), (#), (CLR), (📷)※3, (O), (▲)
PushTalk call	(O) through (9), (✳), (CLR), (✉), (📷), (O), (▲)

≥After you stop the ring tone, vibrator or voice guidance, you can start talking by pressing (⌀), (●), MENU (for videophone calls), or ⓑ (for PushTalk calls).

OFF
You can start talking by pressing a key shown below:

Voice call	(⌀), (●)
Videophone call	(⌀), (●), MENU
PushTalk call	(⌀), (●), ⓑ

※1 You can activate Any Key Answer or Quick Silent also by pressing (✉) when five record messages have already been recorded.
※2 During Key Lock, you can activate Any Key Answer and Quick Silent by pressing and holding (▲) for at least one second.
※3 While "Change" is displayed, you cannot activate Any Key Answer or Quick Silent by pressing (📷).

Information
≥While an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, you can press the switch to start talking, regardless of "Answer setting". (See page 420)

<Setting when Opened>

Setting Response for when Opening FOMA Terminal during Ringing

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Incoming call**
▶**Setting when opened**▶**Select an incoming type**
▶**Keep ringing or Answer**

Information

● If you receive a videophone call with "Answer" set, the still image set for "Substitute image" of "Select image" is sent to the other party.

<Setting when Closed> MENU 1 8

Setting Response for when Closing FOMA Terminal during a Call

Set Response for when Closing FOMA Terminal during a Voice Call/Videophone Call

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Talk**▶**Setting when closed**
▶**Phone/Videophone**▶**Select an item.**

Continue . . . . . . .The call is continued. The setting is completed.
Hold . . . . .The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Set hold tone". For videophone calls, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is displayed.
End the call. . . .The call is finished. This is the same operation as pressing [⌐] during a call. The setting is completed.

2 **Speaker ON or Speaker OFF**

Speaker ON . . . . The hold tone sounds from the speaker.
Speaker OFF . . . The hold tone does not sound from the speaker.

Set Response for when Closing FOMA Terminal during PushTalk

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Talk**▶**Setting when closed**
▶**PushTalk**▶**Speaker call or End the call**

Information

● This function is disabled when an earphone/microphone (option) is connected. The communication state does not change even if you close the FOMA terminal during a call.

<Volume>

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Talk**▶**Volume**▶**Use ⊙ or ▲/▼ to adjust the earpiece volume.**

Adjust the earpiece volume to Level 1 (minimum) through Level 6 (maximum).
● You can adjust the volume by pressing ⊙ or ▲/▼ during a voice call and calling, ⊙ or ▲/▼ during a videophone call and PushTalk call, and by pressing and holding ⊙ (for at least one second) while you are entering a phone number. Press ⊙ or ▲/▼ within two seconds to adjust it.

Information

● The earpiece volume adjusted during a call is retained even after the call ends.
● When you adjust the earpiece volume, the sound volume during a Hands-free call or speaker call for PushTalk is also adjusted.

65

Adjusting Ring Volume

You can adjust the ring volume for incoming calls and mail.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Sound▶Ring volume ▶Select an incoming type ▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume.

● The following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while "Ring volume" is set to "Silent":

🔊 : Set for "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone".

🔊 : Set for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".

🔊 : Set for "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone", and for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".

● If you have set "Step", the ring tone is silent for about three seconds, and then the volume steps up every three seconds, from Level 1 through Level 6.

● While the phone is ringing for a voice call or videophone call, you can adjust the ring volume by pressing ◎. However, you cannot adjust the ring volume in the following cases:

· When "Ring volume" is set to "Step"

· When "Answer setting" is set to "Quick silent" and you stop the ring tone or voice guidance

· During Manner Mode

· When a call is cut off within the ring start time specified by "Ring time"

Putting a Call on Hold when You cannot Answer Immediately

1 During ringing▶ ⌒

The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps for confirmation and the call is put on answer-hold (On Hold).

● The confirmation tone does not sound during Manner Mode or when "Ring volume" is "Silent".

● The other party hears the hold tone set for "On hold tone" of "Set hold tone". For videophone calls, the still image set for "On hold" of "Select image" is displayed.

2 Press ⌒ or ◉(Answer) to release hold and answer the call.

● If "Answer setting" is set to "Any key answer", you can release hold of voice calls by pressing any key of ⓪ through ⑨, ⓧ, ⌗, CLR, MENU, 📷, ◎, ▲, ▼, ✉, or ⓘα.

● If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing ⌒ or ◉(Answer) to release hold. If you press MENU(Subst.) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.

Information

● The caller is charged for the call even during answer-hold (On Hold).

● If you press ⌒ during answer-hold (On Hold), the call will be disconnected.

Putting a Call on Hold during a Call

1 During a call▶ ◉ (Hold)

● The other party hears the hold tone set for "Holding tone" of "Set hold tone". For videophone calls, the still image set for "Holding" of "Select image" is displayed.

● You can put the call on hold by closing the FOMA terminal during the call if you have set "Setting when closed" to "Hold".

Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

2 Press c or ⏺(Answer) to release hold and answer the call.

- When you have put a voice call on hold, you can release the hold also by pressing CLR.
- If a videophone call is on hold, the image through your camera is sent to the other party by pressing c or ⏺(Answer) to release hold. If you press MENU(Subst.) to release hold, the substitute image is sent.
- You can release hold also by opening the FOMA terminal.

Information

- The caller is charged for the call even while the call is on hold.
- If a new call comes in while the current call is put on hold, the hold (Holding) is released.

<Set Hold Tone>
Setting Hold Tone

You can set the guidance the other party hears during on hold.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Talk▶Set hold tone ▶On hold tone or Holding tone▶Select a hold tone.

Tone 1/2 . . .The caller hears the pre-installed guidance in Japanese.
RHAPSODY ON A THEME OF
. . . . .The caller hears the melody. You can set this for "Holding tone" only.
Voice announce
. . . . .The caller hears the sound recorded by "Voice announce". If it has not been recorded, this is not displayed.
- Press ✉(Play) to play back a hold tone. Press CLR to end the demo playback.

Using Public Mode

Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

Public Mode is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode, the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently driving or in a place (a train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where you should refrain from answering the call. Then the call is disconnected.

- Voice Mail Service[1], Call Forwarding Service[1], and Caller ID Display Request Service[2] work taking priority over Public Mode.
  - [1] If a ring time is set to other than 0 seconds for incoming calls, the service works after the Public Mode guidance.
  - [2] When the other party notifies you of the phone number, Public Mode works.
- Public Mode does not work to the calls from the party set to be rejected by Nuisance Call Blocking Service.

1 Press and hold ✳ for at least one second.

Public Mode is activated and "🚗" is displayed.
When a call comes in, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.
- To deactivate Public Mode, perform the same operation. Then, Public Mode is deactivated and "🚗" disappears.

Information

- You can activate/deactivate Public Mode only from the Stand-by display. You can activate/deactivate Public Mode even when "📵" is displayed.
- You can make calls as usual even during Public Mode.
- If you make an emergency call at 110/119/118, Public Mode is released.
- When Public Mode and Manner Mode are activated simultaneously, Public Mode has priority.
- If a "User unset" call comes in while "Caller ID request" is set to "Activate", the Caller ID Request guidance is played back. (The Public Mode guidance is not played back.)
- You cannot use this function during data communication.

When Public Mode (Drive Mode) is activated

· Even when a call comes in, the ring tone does not sound. The "Missed call" icon appears on the display and the call is stored in "Received calls". The guidance is played back to the caller to the effect that you are currently driving or in an area where mobile phones should not be used. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message "Connection failed" appears on the caller's display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you are driving is conveyed to them.

However, when the power is off or " " is displayed, the caller hears the out-of-service area guidance instead of the Public Mode guidance.
· The ring tone does not sound and the Call/Charging indicator does not flicker even when mail or a message comes in. In addition, the set vibrator does not work.
· The ring tone for 64K data communication, alarm tone, charging confirmation tone, the ring tone for i-αppli call and effect tone at the start of i-Widget do not sound, and a melody while an i-αppli program is running is not played back.
· The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed.
· See page 67 for how Public Mode (Drive Mode) and each network service work for incoming calls when they are simultaneously activated.

Using Public Mode (Power Off)

Public Mode (Power Off) is an auto-answer service that puts importance on manners in public spaces. Once you activate Public Mode (Power Off), the guidance is played back telling that you cannot answer the call as you are currently in a place (hospital, airplane, around priority seat in a train, etc.) where use is prohibited. Then the call is disconnected.

1 Enter "✕25251"▶

Public Mode (Power Off) is set. (Nothing is changed on the Stand-by display.)
After setting Public Mode (Power Off) and turning off the power, the guidance "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later." is played back for incoming calls.
●To release Public Mode (Power Off), dial "✕25250".
●To check the setting for Public Mode (Power Off), dial "✕25259".

When Public Mode (Power Off) is activated

The setting stays activated until you dial "✕25250" to deactivate Public Mode (Power Off). You cannot deactivate the setting just by turning on the power.
The guidance is played back to the caller telling that you are currently in a place where you should turn off the power. Then the call is disconnected. When a PushTalk call comes in, no answer is made and the message "Connection failed" appears on the caller's display. For the talk among three or more members, the message to the effect that you do not participate is conveyed to them.
The Public Mode (Power Off) guidance is played back even when you are out of the service area or out of reach of radio waves.
· See page 67 for how Public Mode (Power Off) and each network service work for incoming calls when they are simultaneously activated.
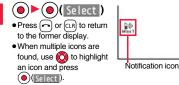
<Missed Calls>
If You could not Answer an Incoming Call

When you could not answer calls (Missed calls), the "Notification icon" appears on the Stand-by display. You can check Received Calls by selecting the icon.

1 ●▶●(Select)
●Press ⌢ or CLR to return to the former display.
●When multiple icons are found, use ○ to highlight an icon and press ●(Select).

Notification icon

Missed call 1

Recording Voice/Video Messages when You cannot Answer a Call

By activating Record Message, you can play back an answer message to incoming calls and record callers' voice/video messages when you cannot answer them even if you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service.

You can record up to five messages for voice calls and up to two messages for videophone calls. Each message can be recorded for up to 20 seconds.

Activate Record Message
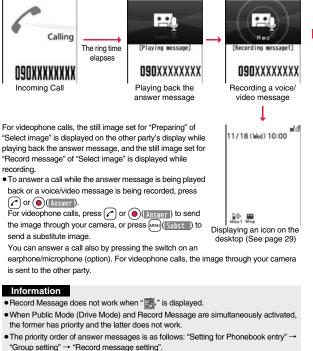
1 MENU▶LifeKit▶Rec. msg/voice memo
▶Record message setting▶ON or OFF
▶Select an answer message.

- ●Press 🖂(Play) to play back the answer message. Press CLR to end the demo playback.
- ●When "Japanese 1", "Japanese 2", or "English" is set, a beep sounds after playing back the answer message to the other party. If "Voice announce" is set, the beep does not sound.

2 Enter a ring time (seconds).

- ●Enter from "000" through "120" in three digits.
- ●You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.
- ●While Record Message is activated, "🔊"~"🔊" (the number of recorded messages for voice calls) and "🔊"~"🔊" (the number of recorded messages for videophone calls) are displayed.

Incoming calls when Record Message Setting is set to "ON"

Incoming Call → The ring time elapses → Playing back the answer message → Recording a voice/video message

Displaying an icon on the desktop (See page 29)

For videophone calls, the still image set for "Preparing" of "Select image" is displayed on the other party's display while playing back the answer message, and the still image set for "Record message" of "Select image" is displayed while recording.

- ●To answer a call while the answer message is being played back or a voice/video message is being recorded, press

  🎧 or ⊙(Answer).

  For videophone calls, press 🎧 or ⊙(Answer) to send the image through your camera, or press MENU(Subst.) to send a substitute image.

  You can answer a call also by pressing the switch on an earphone/microphone (option). For videophone calls, the image through your camera is sent to the other party.

Information

- ●Record Message does not work when "📵" is displayed.
- ●When Public Mode (Drive Mode) and Record Message are simultaneously activated, the former has priority and the latter does not work.
- ●The priority order of answer messages is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Record message setting".
- ●If "Voice announce" selected as an answer message is deleted, the answer message will be set to "Japanese 1".

Information

● When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set at the same time as Record Message, the priority depends on the ring time set for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. To give Record Message priority, set the ring time for Record Message Setting shorter than that for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. Even when you do this, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service works if there are already five record messages for voice calls and two record messages for videophone calls.

● You cannot receive a call from a third party while a voice/video message is being recorded. The third party will hear the busy tone.

<Quick Record Message>
Recording a Message when You cannot Answer an Incoming Call

Even if a call comes in while Record Message is not activated, you can record the caller's voice/video message just for that incoming call.

1 During ringing▶[⌷](Memo) or [▼]

The caller will hear the answer message and then can leave you a voice/video message.

● During Key Lock, press and hold [▼] for at least one second.
● Record Message does not work when five messages for voice calls and two messages for videophone calls have already been recorded. Also if you press [▼] while a PushTalk cal is arriving, Record Message does not work and Manner Mode is set.

<Play/Erase Messages>
<Play/Erase Videophone Messages> MENU 5 5

Playing/Erasing Record Messages/a Voice Memo/Videophone Record Messages/ Movie Memos

Play Back/Erase Record Messages/a Voice Memo

1 [MENU]▶LifeKit▶Rec. msg/voice memo ▶Play/Erase msg.
▶Select a record message or voice memo.

A beep sounds and playback starts.

Play/Erase msg.
1 Record message1   ★
2 Record message2
3 Record message3
4 Record message4
5 Record message5
6 Voice memo

Record Message list

● On the Record Message list, recorded items are indicated by "★".
● It is played back at the volume set for "Volume" (earpiece volume).
● When playback ends, a double-beep sounds and the message "Playing" is cleared from the display.
● The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback. When a caller's phone number is provided, it is displayed. If the caller is stored in the Phonebook, his/her name is also displayed.
  However, the name is not displayed and the phone number only is displayed in the following cases:
  · When you play back a record message from the caller stored as secret data in Normal Mode
  · When you play back a record message for Number A in B Mode (or vice versa) while using 2in1
● If the caller's phone number is displayed during playback, you can make a voice call to that phone number by pressing [⌒]. Press [⌷](V.phone) to make a videophone call and press [⑤] to make a PushTalk call.

To play back using [▼]

From the Stand-by display, press [▼] to play back the latest record message. When record messages are not recorded, a voice memo is played back.

To skip to next message

Each time you press ▼ during playback, messages are played back in the following order: the next new record message → the oldest record message → a voice memo.

To cancel playback midway

Press ⊙(Stop) or CLR.

Play Back/Erase Videophone Record Messages/Movie Memos

1 MENU▶**LifeKit**▶**Rec. msg/voice memo**
▶**Play/Erase VP msg.**
▶**Select a videophone record message or movie memo.**

●On the Videophone Record Message list, recorded items are indicated by "★".

●It is played back at the same volume of the playback sound of i-motion movies.

●The date and time the message/memo was recorded are displayed during playback.

Play/Erase VP msg.
1.VP record msg. 1 ★
2.VP record msg. 2
3.VP movie memo 1
4.VP movie memo 2
5.VP movie memo 3
6.VP movie memo 4
7.VP movie memo 5

Videophone Record Message list

To play back using ▼

From the Stand-by display, press and hold ▼ for at least one second to play back the latest videophone record message. When videophone record messages are not recorded, the latest movie memo is played back.

To cancel playback midway

Press ⊙(　　　) or CLR.

Function Menu of the Record Message List/Videophone Record Message List

Play	You can play back the message.
Erase this	▶**YES** ●You can erase the message/memo also by pressing i𝛼(Erase) during playback.
Erase rec. msg.	You can erase all record messages from the Record Message list, and can erase all videophone record messages from the Videophone Record Message list. ▶**YES**
Erase movie memo [Videophone Record Message list only]	You can erase all movie memos. ▶**YES**
Erase all	You can erase all record messages and a voice memo from the Record Message list, and can erase all videophone record messages and movie memos from the Videophone Record Message list. ▶**YES**

Using Chara-den

You can set up for sending a Chara-den image to the other party.
●See page 361 for Chara-den images.

Set by Call

You can set a Chara-den image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

1 **Chara-den display/Chara-den list**▶⊠(V.phone)

Enter the destination phone number and press ⊠(V.phone) to make a videophone call.

●When the other party's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, you can retrieve it selecting from the Search Phonebook display by pressing ⊙.

●You can search for the phone number also from Received Calls by pressing ⊙ or from Redial by pressing ⊙.

Information

●The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" →"Group setting" → "Select image".

Substitute Image

You can set a Chara-den image for "Substitute image" of "Select image".

1 Chara-den display/Chara-den list/Chara-den Recording display▶[ir](FUNC)▶Substitute image

≥From the Chara-den list, you can set it also by pressing [MENU](Subst.).

Chara-den Setup

You can perform settings for a Chara-den call. These settings are effective only for during a videophone call.

**1 During a Chara-den call▶[ir](FUNC)
▶Chara-den setup▶Do the following operations.**

Switch Chara-den	▶Select a Chara-den image. ≥If you switch Chara-den images, the action mode switches to Whole Action Mode.
Action list	You can display the list for actions that you can operate. ≥Highlight an action and press ⦿(Select) to execute the action. Press [⊠](Detail) to check the details of the action. ≥You can display the Action list also by pressing [✳].
Change action At videophone start-up Whole Action Mode	You can switch the action mode between Whole Action Mode (📑) and Parts Action Mode (🙂). ≥You can switch modes also by pressing [⊠].
SW substitute img.	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for "Pre-installed" of "Select image".
SW org. subst. img.	You can switch a substitute image to be sent to the other party to the still image set for "Original" of "Select image".

Useful Functions for Videophone Calls

Switching Cameras

At videophone start-up	Inside camera

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from through the inside camera to through the outside camera.

1 During a videophone call▶[⊠](OUT)

≥Press [⊠](IN) again to switch to the image through the inside camera.
≥The setting here is effective only for the current videophone call.

Send Substitute Images

You can switch images to be sent to the other party from the image through your camera to the still image or Chara-den image set as the substitute image.
See page 361 for Chara-den.

1 During a videophone call▶[MENU](Subst.)

The substitute image is sent to the other party.
"🖼" is displayed while the still substitute image is being sent, and "🎭" is displayed if you have set a Chara-den image as a substitute image (during a Chara-den call).
≥Press [MENU](My image) again to switch from the substitute image to the image through your camera.

Information

≥The priority order of substitute images to be sent to the other party is as follows: "Setting by call" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select image". Note that "Setting for Phonebook entry" and "Group setting" are disabled when a videophone call comes in without notifying the caller ID.

≥Even when you make a videophone call sending a substitute image, you are charged for the digital communication.

Switch Image Display Positions

You can switch the display locations of the received image and the sent image.

1 During a videophone call, press [📷](Change).

●Each time you press
[📷](Change), the displays
switch.

Zoom

At videophone start-up	WIDE

You can adjust the magnification for the camera image to be sent to the other party. During a videophone call, the maximum magnification is about 1.9 times for the inside camera and about 5.5 times for the outside camera.

1 During a videophone call
▶Use [◯] to adjust the magnification.

●The former zoom setting returns when the videophone call ends.

Function Menu during Videophone Call

CHG to voice call	See page 51.	
Photo light	You can turn on the photo light when sending the image through the outside camera to the other party. **▶ON or OFF**	
	At videophone start-up	
	OFF	
Talk on BT/Phone	You can set whether to communicate through the FOMA terminal or a Bluetooth device. (See page 426)	
Send DTMF tone/ DTMF tone OFF	During a Chara-den call, you can switch to the DTMF Transmission Mode that enables you to enter the data from the numeric keys and to send DTMF (touch-tone signals). You can operate it only during a Chara-den call. ●"Send DTMF tone" is displayed when the mode is not DTMF Transmission Mode and "DTMF tone OFF" is displayed in DTMF Transmission Mode. ●In DTMF Transmission Mode, you cannot operate the action of Chara-den images. ●The DTMF tone may not be received depending on the device of a receiving end.	
V.phone settings		
	Visual preference	See page 74.

Brightness		You can adjust the brightness of the camera image to be sent to other party to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright).
At videophone start-up		▶**Select a brightness level.**
	0	
White balance		You can adjust the colors of the camera image to be sent to the other party, to make the colors look more natural.
At videophone start-up		▶**Select an item.**
	Automatic	**Fine weather** . . . . . For talking outdoors in fine weather
		Cloudy weather . . . For talking in cloudy weather or in the shade
		Automatic. . . . . For adjusting white balance automatically
		Light bulb. . . . . For talking under incandescent light
Color mode set		You can switch the color tone of the camera image to be sent to the other party.
At videophone start-up		▶**Select a color tone.**
	Normal	
Night mode		You can lengthen the camera's exposure time to make the camera image to be sent clear in a dark place.
At videophone start-up		▶**ON or OFF**
	OFF	
Focus		You can set the focus for the outside camera during a videophone call.
At videophone start-up		▶**Close-up or Landscape**
	Landscape	●The focus for the inside camera is fixed to "Portrait" (suitable mode to shoot portraits), so you cannot change the setting.
Chara-den setup		See page 72.
Backlight		You can select whether to light the display constantly or light for about 15 seconds after an operation.
		▶**Constant light or 15 seconds light**
LCD AI		See page 114.
Own number		You can display your phone number.
Key guide		You can display the guide of key operation during a videophone call.

74

Setting Hands-free Videophone

You can set whether to switch to Hands-free automatically for when a videophone call starts.

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Videophone**
▶**Hands-free w/ V. phone**▶**ON or OFF**

●See page 61 for the operation while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free.

<Visual Preference>
Setting Image Quality for Videophone Calls

You can set the quality of both the received image and sent image on the display.

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Videophone**▶**Visual preference**
▶**Select an image quality.**

●"Prefer motion spd" is effective when there is motion in an image. When there is little motion, the quality becomes better if you set to "Prefer img qual".
●If you operate from the Function menu during a videophone call, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call.

Information

●If the radio wave conditions weaken during a videophone call, the image may appear like a mosaic.

<Select Image>
Changing Image Displays for Videophone Calls

You can set an image to be sent to the other party.

1 |MENU|▶**Set./Service**▶**Videophone**▶**Select image**▶**Select an item.**

On hold . . . . . Sets an image for during answer-hold (On hold).
Holding . . . . . Sets an image for while a call is on hold (Holding).
Substitute image
. . . . Sets a substitute image (still image or Chara-den) for when the camera is off.
Record message
. . . . Sets an image while recording a record message.
Preparing . . . Sets an image for while playing back an answer message.
Movie memo
. . . . Sets an image for while recording a movie memo.

2 **Select an image.**
Pre-installed . . . For sending a pre-installed still image to the other party.
Original . . . . . . For sending an appropriate message with a still image stored using "Set display".
Chara-den . . . . . For sending a Chara-den image selected by "Substitute image" from the Function menu while a Chara-den image is displayed. (See page 72)
(Displayed only when "Substitute image" has been selected in step 1.)

● Press [回](Play) to play back a demo to check the still image or Chara-den image.
● To change the setting of "Original" or "Chara-den", press [ⓘα](FUNC), select "Change setting", then select a still image or Chara-den image. If you have selected "Original", select a still image after selecting a folder. However, you cannot select a still image larger than Stand-by (480 x 854) size.

Information
● Even if you delete the still image selected from "Original", that still image is displayed to the other party. To change, set by "Change setting" or "Set display".

Set by Call

You can set an image to be sent to the other party for making a videophone call.

1 **Enter a phone number**
or
call up the detailed display of a Phonebook entry, redial item, dialed call record, or received call record.

2 [ⓘα](FUNC)▶**Select image**▶**Me or Chara-den**
● The setting is completed when you select "Me".
● To cancel the setting by call, select "Release". The setting is completed.

3 **Select a Chara-den image.**

<Voice Call Auto Redial>
Redialing as a Voice Call when a Videophone Call cannot be Connected

If a videophone call cannot be connected, it will be automatically redialed as a voice call.

1 |MENU|▶**Set./Service**▶**Videophone**▶**Voice call auto redial**▶**ON or OFF**

Information
● The charges for calls once switched to voice calls are billed at the rates for the voice calls.
● Voice Call Auto Redial does not work when a videophone call cannot be connected such as when the line is busy or the other party's phone is in Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, Voice Call Auto Redial works when you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support the videophone function.

<Notify Switchable Mode>

Setting for Switching a Voice/Videophone Call during a Call

You can let the other party know that your FOMA terminal can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.
This function is set to "Indication ON" at the time of contract. When "Notify switchable mode" is set to "Indication ON", the caller can switch between the videophone call and voice call.

● You cannot operate "Notify switchable mode" when you are out of the service area or radio waves do not reach, or during a call.

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Videophone**
▶**Notify switchable mode**▶**Do the following operations.**

Indication ON	▶YES▶OK
Indication OFF	▶YES▶OK
Check indication	You can check the setting of the function. ▶OK

<Videophone while Packet>

Selecting Response to Incoming Videophone Calls during i-mode

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Incoming call**
▶**V.phone while packet**▶**Select an item.**

V.phone priority
. . . .Shows the Videophone Call Receiving display. When you answer the videophone call, packet communication is disconnected.
Packet downld priority
. . . .Rejects the videophone call and continues the communication.
V.phone answerphone
. . . .Connects the incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call forwarding
. . . .Forwards the incoming videophone call to the forwarding destination.

Information

●If you have not signed up for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, "Packet downld priority" works even if you set to "V.phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding".

Using Videophone Calls by Interfacing to External Devices

You can operate your FOMA terminal from an external device such as your personal computer for making or receiving videophone calls by connecting them using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (option).
To use this function, you need to install a videophone application program on a dedicated external device or personal computer, and further, you need to prepare equipment (commercial item) such as an earphone/microphone or USB compatible web camera.

●For operating environments for a videophone application program and how to set or operate it, refer to the instruction manual or other literature for an external device.
●You can use "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DOCOMO Videophone Software)" for the application program that supports this function.
Download it from the DOCOMO Videophone Software website.
(For details such as operating environment for the personal computers, refer to the support web page.)

http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/ **(In Japanese only)**

Information

●You cannot make a videophone call from the external device during a voice call.
●When you have signed up for Call Waiting Service, an incoming videophone call from an external device during a voice call is recorded as a missed call in Received Calls. The same applies for an incoming voice call, videophone call, and 64K data communication during a videophone call from an external device.

<Remote Monitoring>

Checking inside of a Room when You are Out

You can use the inside camera of the FOMA terminal as a monitoring camera to observe the remote location from a phone that has the videophone function based on 3G-324M. While "Remote monitoring" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically starts Remote Monitoring when it receives a videophone call from a phone number stored as "Other ID" of "Remote monitoring".

1 m▶**Set./Service**▶**Videophone**▶**Remote monitoring**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

●To release Remote Monitoring, select "Set", then select "OFF".

2 **Other ID**▶**<Not recorded>**
▶**Enter a phone number.**

●To change, select the stored phone number.
●You can enter up to five phone numbers of up to 26 digits by using numerals, #, ✳, and +.
●To return to the setting display for Remote Monitoring, press CLR from the Other ID list after storing phone number.

Other ID
Other ID
1 <Not recorded>
2 <Not recorded>
3 <Not recorded>
4 <Not recorded>
5 <Not recorded>

Other ID list

3 **Ring time**▶**Enter a ring time (seconds).**

●You can enter the time from "003" through "120" in three digits until Remote Monitoring starts after receiving a videophone call.
●You cannot set the same ring time for Remote Monitoring, Auto Answer Setting and Record Message Setting. Set a different time for each.

4 **Set**▶**ON**

●When receiving videophone calls from the phone numbers stored as "Other ID", the FOMA terminal automatically answers to start Remote Monitoring after the ring time elapses.
●" 🎥 " is displayed while this function is set to "ON".
●You cannot set to "ON" in Manner Mode.

Function Menu of the Other ID List

Look-up address	You can call up a phone number in the Phonebook, Dialed Calls, or Received Calls to enter it. ▶**Select an item.** **Phonebook** . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number. **Dialed calls** . . . Highlight a phone number and press ◉(Select). **Received calls** . . . Highlight a phone number and press ◉(Select).
Delete this	▶**YES**
Delete all	▶**YES**

Information

<Delete this> <Delete all>

●If you delete all phone numbers stored as "Other ID", "Remote monitoring" is set to "OFF".

Perform Remote Monitoring

1 **Make a videophone call from a stored phone number.**
After the ring time set for "Remote monitoring" elapses, Remote Monitoring automatically starts.

●The image through the receiving end's camera appears on the display and the sound comes out of the speaker.
●You cannot set Voice-only Remote Monitoring.
●Make a videophone call notifying your caller ID. If the caller ID is not notified, Remote Monitoring will not start and the call will be handled as an ordinary incoming videophone call.

2 **Remote Monitoring ends when the calling end or receiving end presses** ⌐.

For answering a videophone call without starting Remote Monitoring at the receiving end

Press ⌐ or ◉(Answer) before the FOMA terminal answers a videophone call automatically. If you press m(Subst.), the videophone call starts sending the substitute image to the other party.
●When a remote monitoring call comes in, "Setting when opened" is disabled.
●If you press ⌐ when a remote monitoring call comes in, the call will be cut and Remote Monitoring will not start.

Information

≥When your FOMA terminal is used for the receiving end, an image through the caller's camera appears, and sound comes out. (You cannot switch to a substitute image.)

≥Remote Monitoring does not start during Manner Mode and Public Mode (Drive Mode). However, it starts even during Lock All.

≥When Remote Monitoring is set to "ON" and a videophone call comes in from the phone number set as "Other ID", Remote Monitoring starts after the set ring time, even when "Ring time", "Auto answer setting", or "Record message setting" is set and regardless of their ring times.

≥When Remote Monitoring is not performed, it is recorded in Received Calls as a missed videophone call.

≥If an earphone/microphone (option) is connected when a remote monitoring call comes in, the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and the speaker, even when "Headset usage setting" is set to "Headset only".

≥The ring tone for Remote Monitoring sounds. (You cannot change the ring tone for Remote Monitoring.)
The ring tone sounds at the volume set for "Videophone" of "Ring volume", but at "Level 2" if you have set "Step", "Level 1" or below. The color is "Gradation", and its lighting pattern is "Standard", regardless of the Incoming Illumination setting.

≥You cannot put incoming remote monitoring calls on answer-hold (On Hold).

≥If you set both Call Forwarding Service and Remote Monitoring, and give priority to Remote Monitoring, set its ring time shorter than that for Call Forwarding Service.

≥To use Call Forwarding Service for Remote Monitoring, store the phone number of dialing side as "Other ID" and set a 3G-324M videophone as the forwarding destination.

≥**You may be imposed punishment according to the law and rule (such as the nuisance prevention ordinance) if you use the FOMA terminal to give a remarkable nuisance and misdeed to the public.**

> **Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when shooting and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.**

PushTalk

This service provides you a pleasurable group calls among multiple parties (two to five persons including yourself). The participants can speak by turns by pressing the PushTalk key.

※You are charged a PushTalk communication fee each time you press the PushTalk key (speak).

≥For details on PushTalk or compatible models, refer to DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

■**PushTalkPlus**※

This service enables you to have a PushTalk call with up to 20 persons including you. You can use the shared Phonebook on the network, and can check the members for their status, thus PushTalk becomes more useful.

※You need to subscribe separately.

≥For details such as how to operate, refer to the booklet which is supplied at subscription.

Making a PushTalk Call

**1 Enter the other party's phone number
▶ [p]**

When you are dialing, a confirmation tone for starting a PushTalk call sounds for a few seconds, and then the same ringback tone as the voice (videophone) call sounds.

≥You can make a group call to multiple persons using the PushTalk Phonebook. (See page 82 and page 83)

2 When the other party answers, talk while pressing 🔊.

When the other party answers, a confirmation tone for starting communication sounds.

- " " blinks during dialing and lights during communication.
- ●When you get the talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone sounds. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing 🔊 and having the talker's right. When you release 🔊, the talker's right is released, and a confirmation tone sounds.
- ●You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds even if you press 🔊 when another member has it.
- ●Press 🖂(🗗Add) or press 🔍(FUNC) and select "Add member" to add a member. Go to step 1 of "Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call" on page 81.

3 Press 🔚 to end the communication after talking.

A tone to notify the disconnection of communication sounds at the other end.

- ●When a call you made is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press 🔚, and "Disconnected" appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members cannot communicate due to "Disconnected", "No PT Func", etc., the PushTalk communication itself ends.

Information

- ●The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses 🔊 and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
- ●You cannot make emergency calls at 110/119/118 from PushTalk.
- ●The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
- ●Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". (See page 85) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
- ●The FOMA terminal works according to "Setting when closed" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing 🔍(FUNC) and selecting "Set. when closed". (See page 65)

Information

- ●Whether to notify others of your phone number when you make PushTalk calls follows the setting for "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" (see page 46). However, when you set "Notify caller ID" from the Function menu for dialing, or when "Notify"/"Not notify" is displayed in the detailed Redial/Dialed Call/Received Call display, each of those settings will work.
- ●When you make a PushTalk call with your phone number notified, your phone number as well as all members' phone numbers are notified to all members including added members. When you make a PushTalk call without notifying your phone number, "User unset" appears in the caller's and member's fields on the displays of all the members including added members. Your phone number is very important information, so take the utmost care to notify others of it.
- ●If you make a PushTalk call during i-mode communication, the i-mode communication is disconnected.
- ●You cannot use PushTalk by Number B of 2in1.

Making/Receiving a PushTalk group call

You can use the PushTalk Phonebook or Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to communicate with multiple members.

While making or receiving a PushTalk group call, the group name and the members in the group are displayed. Press 🔵 to confirm other members. When a call is received with the other party's phone number not provided, "User unset" is displayed.
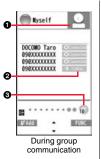
Re-participating or participating midway in PushTalk communication

Use Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call while the PushTalk communication continues among other members.

- ●If the PushTalk communication has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.

■**Display while dialing/communicating**

❶The phone number of the member who has the talker's right is displayed, and the state of the talker's right is displayed in color of the round icon at the upper left. When the name of that member, phone number, and image are stored in the Phonebook, his/her name and image are displayed. However, when you cannot receive a member's information correctly, "?" is displayed.

During group communication

Color of the round icon at the upper left	State of the talker's rights
Blue	Calling
Green	You can get the talker's right.
Blinking in green	You have the talker's right.
Blinking in yellow	Another member has the talker's right.
Blinking in green and red	The talker's right will be released automatically in a few seconds because it has long been retained (A release notice tone sounds).

❷The corresponding state※ of each member is shown.

Display	Corresponding state of members
Calling	Calling to the member
Connected	Has participated in the PushTalk call.
No PT Func	The destination phone does not support PushTalk.
Not avail.	The destination phone is out of the service area or turned off.
Busy	A voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk communication is in progress at the member.
	i-mode communication is in progress at the member who has given priority to i-mode by "i-mode arrival act".
ID Request	You made a call without notifying of your caller ID to the member who has activated "Caller ID request".
Driving	The member has activated Public Mode (Drive Mode).
PublicMode	The member has activated Public Mode (Power Off), and is out of the service area or the power is turned off.
Disconnected	You have dialed a non-existent number.
	The state is other than above: the member does not answer, has ended the PushTalk call, or does not use a DOCOMO mobile phone.

※ The corresponding states other than "Calling" and "Connected" are displayed only for the PushTalk communication among three or more members.

❸The number of times you have got the talker's right is the total of the number of "●" and the number shown in " ". When 999 times are exceeded, the counting is reset to 0.

80

Adding a Member during a PushTalk Call

You can make a PushTalk call to another member during PushTalk communication and add that member to the communication.
You can add a person to the members by accessing the PushTalk Phonebook, Phonebook, or Dialed Calls/Received Calls, or by directly entering a phone number.
You can add up to five members (including yourself), and can repeat adding up to that number.

●Members can be added from the calling end only.
●You can add even the members who use the PushTalk compatible models which do not have this function.
●If you have already made a call to four members, you cannot add a new member though you can call up a member who has exited the call again.
●The added members are not stored in Redial/Dialed Calls.

1 During PushTalk communication▶[⊠](P.Add)
   ▶Do the following operations.

View PushTalk PB	You can call up a PushTalk Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call. (See page 83) Instead of pressing [⑤], press [⊠](Dial) to call. ●Press [⑥] to switch between the PushTalk Phonebook list and PushTalk Group list.
View phonebook	You can call up a Phonebook entry to make a PushTalk call. ▶Call up a Phonebook entry▶Highlight a phone number and press [⊠](Dial).
Direct input	You can enter a phone number to make a PushTalk call. ▶Enter a phone number▶[⊠](Dial)
View call records	You can call up Dialed Calls/Received Calls to make a PushTalk call. ▶Dialed calls or Received calls▶Select a record ▶Select a phone number▶[⊠](Dial)

Information
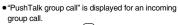
●The caller cannot add members if he/she uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function.

Information

●For a member who uses a PushTalk compatible model which does not have this function, the members added during PushTalk communication are not shown and a confirmation tone does not sound.

Receiving a PushTalk Call

1 When a PushTalk call comes in, "PushTalk call" is displayed, the ring tone sounds, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.

●"PushTalk group call" is displayed for an incoming group call.
●To reject a call, press [⏻](FUNC) during ringing and select "Call rejection". You can reject the call also by pressing [☎].

2 Press [⑤] to answer a PushTalk call
   ▶Talk while pressing [⑤].

●You can answer also by pressing [☎] or [●](Answer) instead of [⑤].
●When you get talker's right, the talker's right obtained tone is played back. The other party hears your voice only while you are pressing [⑤] and having the talker's right. When you release [⑤], the talker's right is released and a confirmation tone sounds.
●You cannot get the talker's right and an error tone sounds, even if you press [⑤] when another member has it.
●"Setting when opened" and "Record message setting" become invalid.

3 Press 📵 to end the communication after talking.

A tone for confirming the end of communication sounds at the other end.

● When a call you received is a group call, the PushTalk communication itself continues even if you press 📵, and "Disconnected" appears on each member's display and a confirmation tone sounds. However, when all the members cannot communicate due to "Disconnected", "No PT Func", etc., the PushTalk communication itself ends.

Information

●The talker is charged a communication fee from when he/she presses 🎵 and the talker's right obtained tone sounds.
●The duration you can talk per talker's right is limited. The talker's right release notice tone sounds before the limited time arrives, and the talker's right is released. In addition, the PushTalk communication itself ends when no one gets the talker's right in a certain period of time.
●Just after purchase, Hands-free is automatically activated by "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". (See page 85) However, Hands-free is deactivated during Manner Mode regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk".
●The FOMA terminal works according to "Setting when closed" if you close it during communication. You can set also by pressing [i×](FUNC) and selecting "Set. when closed". (See page 65)
●You cannot use "On hold" or "Holding" for PushTalk.
●When you received a PushTalk call from the phone number you set for "Call rejection" or "Reject unknown", "Disconnected" is replied. When you have activated "Caller ID request", "ID Request" is replied.
●A PushTalk call that comes in during a voice call, a PushTalk call that comes in during Public Mode (Drive Mode), and a voice call (when "PushTalk arrival act" is set to other than "Answer"), a videophone call, data communication, or a PushTalk call that comes in during PushTalk communication are recorded as missed calls in Received Calls.
●A PushTalk call that comes in during a videophone call or during data communication does not work and is not recorded in Received Calls.
●After you finish PushTalk communication or when you cannot answer to a PushTalk call, you can use a received call record to make a PushTalk call and to re-participate or participate midway in the communication so long as the PushTalk communication continues among other members. If the PushTalk communication among other members has already been finished, your call is dialed as a new PushTalk call.
●When a caller adds members during PushTalk communication, the added members are not stored in Received Calls.

Information

●See page 86 for how to respond to the PushTalk call during i-mode communication.
●When a PushTalk call comes in during Lock All or Omakase Lock, " 📳((Miss1 " appears after the lock is released.

<Store in PushTalk Phonebook>
Adding Entries to PushTalk Phonebook

From the items stored in a FOMA terminal's Phonebook entry, you need to store a name (reading) and a phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook. You can store up to 1,000 entries in the PushTalk Phonebook.

1 🎵 ▶[MENU](New)
▶Do the following operations.

● You can store also by selecting <New>.
● If you store multiple phone numbers from a Phonebook entry, the phone number previously stored in the PushTalk Phonebook is overwritten.

PushTalk Phonebook list

View phonebook	You can access an entry already stored in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook and store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. ▶Call up a Phonebook entry▶Select a phone number▶YES
Direct input	You can store the entry in the PushTalk Phonebook after storing it in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook. ▶Phone▶Select a storing method. **New** . . . Go to step 2 on page 88. **Add** . . . Go to step 3 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 93. ● When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, press [✉](Finish) and select the phone number you want to store in the PushTalk Phonebook. The "★" mark is added to the phone number that has already been stored in the PushTalk Phonebook.

Voice/Videophone Calls/PushTalk

View call records	You can access a dialed call record or received call record to store it in the PushTalk Phonebook. You cannot store in the PushTalk Phonebook from the dialed/received call record of the party who is not stored in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook. ▶**Dialed calls or Received calls**▶**Select a record** ▶**Select a phone number**▶**YES**

Information

≥In the PushTalk Phonebook, you cannot store the Phonebook entries set to B by Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

Store in Group

You can store PushTalk Phonebook entries in groups. You can store up to 19 members per group and create up to 10 groups.

1 PushTalk Phonebook list
▶[カメラ]**(Group)**

≥Press [カメラ](Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook list.

PushTalk Group list

2 Select a group▶[MENU]**(Add)**
▶Put a check mark for members to be stored
▶[メール]**(Finish)**

≥You can store also by selecting <Edit group members> from the Group Member list.

Group Member list → Group Member Selection display

Function Menu of the Group Member Selection Display

Members to store	You can display only members applied with a check mark. ●Press (●)(Store) to store the members to the group.

Search	▶**Select a search method.** **Reading?** . . See page 94. **Group?** . . . . See page 94. ▶**Select a member.** You can display the Group Member Selection display with the searched members selected.

Making a Call from PushTalk Phonebook

You can make a group call to up to four members using the PushTalk Phonebook or PushTalk group.

1 PushTalk Phonebook list
▶Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to
▶[ボ]**or**[メール]**(PDial)**

≥Press [カメラ](Group) to show the PushTalk Group list.
≥When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.

PushTalk Phonebook list

Information

≥When all the members cannot communicate due to "Disconnected", "No PT Func", etc., the PushTalk communication ends.

Make a Call from PushTalk Group

1 PushTalk Group list▶**Select a group.**

≥Select a group and press [ボ] or [メール](PDial) to make a call to all the members in the group.
≥Press [カメラ](Member) to show the PushTalk Phonebook list.

PushTalk Group list

2 Put a check mark for members you want to make a call to

▶ |✆| or (✉)(`PDial`)

≥When you do not check any members, the call is made to the highlighted member.

```
        Group
      Group 1
 <Edit group members>
✓DOCOMO Ichiro
 DOCOMO Jiro
 DOCOMO Saburo
✓DOCOMO Taro
```
Group Member list

Information

≥When five or more members are stored in a group, you cannot make a call to all the members by selecting the group.

Function Menu of the PushTalk Phonebook List/PushTalk Group List/Group Member List

Members to call	When the PushTalk Phonebook list or Group Member list is displayed, you can display the checked members only. ≥Press |✆| or (●)(`PDial`) to make a PushTalk call. ≥Press (🔊)(`FUNC`) to select "Notify caller ID" and then you can select whether to notify your phone number. When "Cancel prefix" is selected, the FOMA terminal works according to the setting by "Caller ID notification".
Search PushTalk PB [Phonebook list only]	▶**Select a search method.** **Reading?** . . . See page 94. **Group?** . . . . . See page 94. ▶**Select a member.** You can display the PushTalk Phonebook list with the searched members selected.
Store in P-Talk PB [Phonebook list only]	See page 82.
DEL from P-Talk PB [Phonebook list only]	See page 85.

Edit group members [Group list/Member list]	You can edit the members in the group. Go to step 2 on page 83.
Edit group name [Group list only]	▶**Enter a group name.** ≥You can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters.
DEL from PT group [Group list only]	See page 85.
DEL group members [Member list only]	See page 85.
Sound setting	See page 85.
Vibration setting	See page 85.
Auto answer set.	See page 85.
Ring time setting	See page 85.
Hands-Free	See page 85.
Set. when closed	See page 65.
i-mode arrival act	See page 86.
P-Talk arrival act	See page 85.
Network connection	You can connect to the network to use PushTalkPlus. This is available only when you have singed up for PushTalkPlus. (See page 78)

<Delete from PushTalk Phonebook>
Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries

1 PushTalk Phonebook list▶ⓘα(　FUNC　)
▶DEL from P-Talk PB▶Do the following operations.

Delete this	▶Select a deleting method.
	DEL from P-Talk PB
	. . . Deletes an entry in the PushTalk Phonebook only. Does not delete the entry in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.
	DEL from all PBs
	. . . Deletes an entry in both the PushTalk Phonebook and FOMA terminal's Phonebook.
	▶**YES**
Delete all	▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES**
	●The FOMA terminal's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

Delete from PushTalk Group

1 PushTalk Group list▶ⓘα(　FUNC　)▶DEL from PT group
▶YES

Delete Group Members

1 Group Member list▶ⓘα(　FUNC　)▶DEL group members
▶Do the following operations.

| Delete this | ▶**YES** |
| Delete all | ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES** |

Information

●Even when you delete PushTalk groups or group members, the PushTalk Phonebook entries and FOMA terminal's Phonebook entries are not deleted.

Setting for Making/Receiving a PushTalk Call

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶PushTalk
▶Do the following operations.

Auto answer setting	▶Select an item.
	ON . . . . . Automatically answers immediately after receiving regardless of "Ring time setting".
	OFF . . . . Does not answer automatically.
Ring time setting	▶**Enter a ring time (seconds).**
	●Enter two digits from "01" through "60".
	●"Disconnected" is displayed at the other end after the ring time has elapsed.
Hands-free w/ PushTalk	You can set whether to hear the other party's voice from the speaker or from the earpiece for when PushTalk communication starts.
	▶**ON or OFF**
	●See page 61 for how the FOMA terminal works while Hands-free is activated and how to switch to Hands-free during communication.
PushTalk arrival act	▶Select an item.
	Voice mail . . . . Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
	Call forwarding . . . Forwards an incoming voice call to the forwarding destination.
	Call rejection . . . . . Rejects an incoming voice call and does not answer.
	Answer . . . . Shows the Voice Call Receiving display.
Sound setting	You can set a pattern for the confirmation tones which sound during PushTalk communication.
	▶**Select a pattern.**
Vibration setting	You can set whether to be notified by vibration for when you try to get the talker's right or when a member's state changes to "Connected".
	▶**ON or OFF**

Information

<Auto answer setting>
≥When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered even when the FOMA terminal is closed regardless of "Setting when closed".
≥When you set to "ON", calls are automatically answered after switching to Hands-free regardless of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk". However, the FOMA terminal works following the setting of "Hands-free w/ PushTalk" if you open the FOMA terminal after you answer a call with the FOMA terminal closed.
≥When you set to "ON", the ring tone, vibrator, Call/Charging indicator, and backlight do not work. Calls are not automatically answered during Manner Mode.

<PushTalk arrival act>
≥If you press 📞 for an incoming voice call while "Answer" is set, the Call Receiving display appears after you finish the PushTalk communication, and then you can answer the voice call. To continue the PushTalk communication, press 📷(▐ FUNC ▐) and select "Call rejection", "Call forwarding", or "Voice mail".

<Sound setting>
≥In the "Simple" mode, some confirmation tones (talking right obtained tone, etc.) during PushTalk communication become silent.

i-mode Arrival Act

You can set whether to show the PushTalk Call Receiving display for when a PushTalk call comes in during i-mode communication.

1 📷▶**i-mode settings**▶**i-mode arrival act**▶**Select an item.**

PushTalk preferred. . . . Ends i-mode communication and brings up the PushTalk Call Receiving display.
i-mode preferred . . . . . . Rejects receiving a PushTalk call and continues i-mode communication. The call is not recorded in Received Calls.

Phonebook

Phonebooks Available for FOMA Terminal

You can use two types of Phonebook, namely the Phonebook in the FOMA terminal itself, and the Phonebook on the UIM.

			FOMA terminal	UIM
Number of entries			1,000 entries	50 entries
Contents of Phonebook	Basic item	Name (Reading)	○	○
		Group	19 groups	10 groups
		Phone number	4 phone numbers	1 phone number
		Phone number icon	○	—
		Mail address	3 mail addresses	1 mail address
		Mail address icon	○	—
		Address	○	—
		Location information	○	—
		Birthday	○	—
		Memo	○	—
		Image	100 images	—
		Memory No.	From 000 to 999	—
	Setting item	Ring tone	○	
		Vibrator	○	
		Illumination	○	
		Picture	○	
		Chara-den	100 Chara-den images	—
		Mail ring tone	○	
		Mail vibrator	○	
		Mail illumination	○	
		Answer message	○	
	Restrictions	Restrict dialing		
		Call rejection		
		Call acceptance	○	—
		Call forwarding		
		Voice mail		
	Secret code		○	—
	Storage in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only		○	—

		FOMA terminal	UIM
Contents of Group	Name	○	○
	Ring tone		
	Vibrator		
	Illumination		
	Picture		
	Chara-den	○	—
	Mail ring tone		
	Mail vibrator		
	Mail illumination		
	Answer message		

○: Can be stored.　　　—: Cannot be stored.

● You can set your UIM into another FOMA terminal and use the UIM Phonebook entries.

<Add to Phonebook>
Storing Phonebook Entries

You can store Phonebook entries in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or on the UIM.

1 ◎(for at least one second)▶Phone or UIM

The Edit Name display appears. Go to step 2 and enter a name.

2 **Do the following operations.**

● You can press ◎ to switch between the "Basic item" tab and "Settings" tab for the FOMA terminal's Phonebook.

| For the FOMA terminal | For the UIM |

N Name	You can enter the name of the person or company in kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.
	▶**Enter a name.**
	●For the FOMA terminal, you can enter up to 16 full-pitch/32 half-pitch characters. You can enter pictograms and symbols as well.
	●For the UIM, you can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters/21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 10 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.
R Reading	You can enter the reading in half-pitch katakana, alphabetic characters, or numerals.
	▶**Enter a reading.**
	●For the FOMA terminal, you can enter up to 32 half-pitch characters. You can enter half-pitch symbols as well.
	●For the UIM, you can enter up to 12 full-pitch characters/25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. (Half-pitch katakana characters cannot be entered.) When the entry contains both full-pitch and half-pitch characters, you can store up to 12 characters from the beginning regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters.
	●If the displayed reading is acceptable, you do not need to edit it. However, depending on the characters entered for names or entering method, they are not reflected in the reading.
	●If you enter "ｯ (reduced size)" or "ｮ (reduced size)" for a name, "ﾂ (half-pitch, regular size)" (for the FOMA terminal) and "ツ (regular size)" (for the UIM) are displayed in the reading field.
GR Group	In the FOMA terminal, 19 groups are available. On the UIM, 10 groups are available.
	▶**Select a group.**
	●When the storage is completed with no group selected, the Phonebook entry is stored in "No setting".

☎ Phone number	You can store up to four phone numbers per Phonebook entry in the FOMA terminal. You can set an icon for each phone number to categorize mobile phone numbers, office phone numbers, and so on.
	You can store only one phone number per Phonebook entry on the UIM.
	▶**Enter a phone number.**
	●Enter from the city code for the phone numbers.
	●You can enter up to 26 digits. However, you can enter up to 20 digits for blue UIMs.
	●Press and hold ＊ for at least one second to insert a pause (p) into the phone number you store. However, you cannot insert the pause (p) to the beginning of phone number or insert it consecutively. The pause (p) inserted to the end of phone number is not stored.
	●If you insert "＊" in the middle of a phone number, you cannot make a call. However, the phone number is recorded in Redial or Dialed Calls.
	●You can store the phone number which includes "#" such as that for information service as well.
	▶**Select an icon.**
	●If you have stored a phone number in the FOMA terminal, another " ☎ <Phone number>" will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another phone number, select " ☎ <Phone number>".

✉ Mail address	You can store up to three mail addresses per Phonebook entry in the FOMA terminal. You can set an icon for each mail address to categorize mobile phone addresses, home addresses, and so on. You can store only one mail address per Phonebook entry on the UIM. ▶**Enter a mail address.** ●The mail address can consist of up to 50 half-pitch alphabets, numerals or symbol characters. ●When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only. ●For the FOMA terminal, you can set a secret code as well. (See page 98) ▶**Select an icon.** ●If you have stored a mail address in the FOMA terminal, another "✉ <Mail address>" will appear in the Add-to-Phonebook display. To store another mail address, select "✉ <Mail address>".	
📍 Address	▶**Enter a ZIP code**▶**Enter a postal address.** ●You can enter up to 7 digits for the zip code. ●You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100 half-pitch characters for the postal address. Further, you can enter pictograms as well. ●You cannot enter "〒" or "-" (hyphen) in the zip code.	

📍 Location information	▶**Select an item.** **By position loc.** . . . .Measures the current location (see page 326) and store the location information. After checking the location information, press ⬤(⬛ Set ⬛). **From loc. history** . . . .Select a piece of location information from Location History (see page 335) and store it. **Attach from image** . . . .Stores the location information from an image. Select a folder, then the image. **From own number** . . . .Stores the location information from "Own number". Enter your Terminal Security Code and press ⬤(⬛Select⬛). ●To delete the stored location information, select "Delete location info".
🎂 Birthday	▶**Enter a birthday.** ●You can enter the birthday from January 1, 1800 through December 31, 2099. ●You can check the birthday from Schedule. (See page 408)
📝 Memo	▶**Enter a memo.** ●You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters. Further, you can enter pictograms as well.

Image	The stored still image is displayed when you call up the Phonebook entry.
	▶**Select an item.**
	Select image . . . You can store a still image in Data Box.
	Shoot image. . . . You can store the shot still image.
	Perform step 2 through step 3 on page 234.
	●To release the stored still image, select "Release image".
	●The size of a still image you can store is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 300 Kbytes in JPEG format or GIF format.
	●If you store a still image larger than 72 x 54 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the detailed Phonebook display.
	●If you store a still image larger than 240 x 180 dots, it is displayed shrunk on the Call Receiving display.
	●When "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON", the stored still image is displayed for an incoming call. However, when another image is stored for "Picture", that image is preferentially displayed for the incoming call.
Memory No.	▶**Enter a memory number.**
	●Enter a three-digit number of "000" through "999".
	●The lowest empty memory number "010" through "999" is entered in advance.
	If "010" through "999" are all occupied, the lowest empty memory number from "000" through "009" is entered.
Ring tone	You can set a ring tone for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select ring tone**
	Go to step 2 on page 104.
	●To release the stored ring tone, select "Release ring tone".
Vibrator	You can set a vibration pattern for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select vibrator**▶**Select a vibration pattern.**
	●To release the stored vibrator, select "Release vibrator".

Illumination	You can set an illumination pattern for when a voice call or videophone call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select illumination**▶**Select an item.**
	●To release the stored illumination, select "Release illumination".
Picture	You can set an image to be displayed for when a call comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select picture**▶**Select a type of image**▶**Select a folder**
	▶**Select an image.**
	●To release the stored image, select "Release picture".
Chara-den	The stored Chara-den image is displayed as a substitute image for videophone calls with the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select Chara-den**▶**Select a Chara-den image.**
	●To release the stored Chara-den image, select "Release Chara-den".
Mail ring tone	You can set a ring tone for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select ring tone**
	Go to step 2 on page 104.
	●To release the stored mail ring tone, select "Release ring tone".
Mail vibrator	You can set a vibration pattern for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select vibrator**▶**Select a vibration pattern.**
	●To release the stored mail vibrator, select "Release vibrator".
Mail illumination	You can set an illumination pattern for when a mail message comes in from the person stored in the Phonebook.
	▶**Select illumination**▶**Select an item.**
	●To release the stored mail illumination, select "Release illumination".

Phonebook

⊞ **Answer message**	You can set an answer message for Record Message by Phonebook entry. ▶**Select answer message**▶**Select an answer message.** ●To release the stored answer message, select "Release answer message".	

3 Press ⊠(Finish).

●If you have not entered any name, "Finish" is not displayed and you cannot store the entry.

Phonebook entries while editing

When the low battery alarm sounds

The Phonebook entry you are editing is saved automatically. The confirmation display appears asking whether to resume editing when you continue editing after charging the battery or when you operate step 1 on page 88 and select the storage location for the interrupted Phonebook entry after changing to a charged battery.

Recall . . . You can resume editing the Phonebook entry.

New . . . . You can edit a new Phonebook entry. In this case, the interrupted data is retained. If you execute "Add to phonebook" after storing the new Phonebook entry, the confirmation display appears again.

●Only the most recently interrupted entry is retained.

●If you resume editing the data but then cancel editing without storing it, that data will be abandoned. Once you recall the data, be sure to store it.

If you receive a call or mail

You can respond it leaving the edited data as it is, thanks to the Multitask function.
To return to the Phonebook Edit display, press and hold [🔲] for at least one second to switch the menu. You can return to the Phonebook Edit display also by ending the call or mail function.

Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook

You can store the displayed or selected phone number, mail address, and still image in the FOMA terminal's or UIM's Phonebook.

Operation	Storable items
While a phone number is entered	Phone number
While a redial item, dialed call record, or received call record is displayed	Phone number
While Sent Address or Received Address is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a site or screen memo is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the text of Message R/F or mail is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While the data scanned by Bar Code Reader is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While a ToruCa file is displayed	Phone number/Mail address
While your current location is displayed	Location information
While the location history is displayed	Location information/ Phone number/Mail address
While a registered LCS client is displayed	Name/Phone number
While the Still Image list or a still image is displayed	Still image

**1 Call up/Select an item to be stored▶[i⍺](　FUNC　)
▶Add to phonebook**

- ●When you operate from the detailed mail display, select "Store" from the Function menu and then select "Add to phonebook".
- ●To store the address of the sender (or of another recipient of simultaneous mail) of the received mail or the destination address of the sent mail into the Phonebook, select "Store" from the Function menu and then select "Store address". If the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be stored.
- ●To store a still image in the Phonebook, select "Set display" from the Function menu and then select "Phonebook".
- ●When "Add to phonebook" is displayed on the Scanned Code Result display for Bar Code Reader, select "Add to phonebook"; then other information in the scanned code besides the phone number or mail address is entered into each field.

2 Phone or UIM▶Select a storing method.

New . . . Go to step 2 on page 88.
Add . . . Adds data to the existing Phonebook entry. When storing data on the UIM, "Overwrite" is displayed.

**3 Select a search method▶Search the Phonebook
▶Select a Phonebook entry to be stored▶(●)(Select)**

The phone number or mail address is entered automatically.
- ●See step 2 on page 88 to edit other items in the Phonebook entry.
- ●When you store into the FOMA terminal's Phonebook, you can remain the original entry and store a new entry into a different location by changing the memory number.

4 [⊠](Finish)▶YES

- ●If you store the entry in the UIM Phonebook, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original entry, or select "Add" to store it as a new entry.

Information

- ●The Phonebook entry does not store the information of "Notify caller ID" included in Redial/Dialed Calls. To set Caller ID Notification, add "186"/"184" to the phone number and store it.

Information

- ●Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces or deleted, and then stored.
- ●You may not be able to store the information from some sites into the Phonebook.

<Group Setting>
Setting Groups

You can utilize the Phonebook by sorting the entries by group such as "Company" or "Friend", or by your interest such as "Baseball" or "Ceramic art". You can set a ring tone, vibration pattern, or illumination by group.

1 [MENU]▶Phonebook▶Group setting

- ●The groups on the UIM are indicated by " ▣ ".
- ●To reset the group names and respective settings by group, which have already been stored, press [i⍺](　FUNC　), select "Reset group", and then select "YES".

**2 Highlight a group and press [⊠](Edit)
▶Select an item to be set▶Set the contents.**

- ●When you select " GR Group name", enter a group name. You can store up to 10 full-pitch/21 half-pitch characters. However, you can store only up to 10 characters (regardless of full-pitch or half-pitch characters) when you enter both full-pitch and half-pitch characters for a UIM group name.
- ●See step 2 on page 88 for the operations of the other items. However, you cannot set for groups on the UIM.
- ●Select a stored group, or press [i⍺](　FUNC　) and select "Check setting" to check its settings. However, you cannot check the settings of the groups on the UIM.

3 Press [⊠](Finish).

93

\<Search Phonebook\>
Dialing from Phonebooks

You can retrieve stored Phonebook entries by eight search methods.

1 ◎▶**Do the following operations.**

●The display for the same search method as the previous one appears once you have carried out a search. Press CLR to show the Search Phonebook display.

Search Phonebook display

All?	You can show all Phonebook entries. ●The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 95)
Reading?	You can enter the reading of the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full reading. ▶**Enter a part of the reading**▶◎ ●The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 95)
Group?	You can show Phonebook entries stored in a specified group. ▶**Select a group.** ●The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 95) ●If you press ✉(⏻FUNC⏻) on the Group list, the Function menu for "Group setting" is displayed.
Memory No.? [FOMA terminal only]	You can search for the entry by the memory number assigned when it was stored in the Phonebook. ▶**Enter the memory number.** ●Enter from "000" through "999" in three digits. ●The tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. (See page 95) ●From the Stand-by display, you can press 📞 and then press ◎ to display the Memory No. Dial display. From there you can make a voice call by entering the memory number of the phone number.
Name?	You can enter the other party's name from the first character and search. You do not need to enter the full name. ▶**Enter a part of the name**▶◎
Phone number?	You can enter a part of the other party's phone number and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of phone number. ▶**Enter a part of the phone number**▶◎ ●You can display the Phonebook list also by entering a part of the phone number from the Stand-by display or the "Talking" display, and pressing ◎.
Mail address?	You can enter a part of the other party's mail address and search. You can search for the entry even from the middle of mail address. ▶**Enter a part of the mail address**▶◎
2-touch dial? [FOMA terminal only]	You can show the list of Phonebook entries in memory number 000 through 009. ●Phonebook entries not yet stored or being set with secret are displayed as ＜－－－＞.

2 **Select an entry**▶📞 **or** ◎(⏻Dial⏻)

●When the entry contains multiple phone numbers, or when you searched by "Mail address?", press ◎ from the detailed display to select a phone number.
●You can make a videophone call by pressing ✉(⏻V.phone⏻) or PushTalk call by pressing 📷.

Information

●In a search method other than "Group?" and "2-touch dial?", enter nothing and press ◎; then you can search all through the Phonebook.
●When no Phonebook entry is found that matches the condition you entered by "Reading?" or "Memory No.?", the entry that is the closest to the condition is displayed.

Search order

The Phonebook entries are searched in the order of readings you entered for storing, as follows:
"Space at the beginning of the reading" → "Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、... ン)" → "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)" → "Numerals (0 through 9)" → "Symbols" → "No reading".
For "All?" and "Reading?", searching is done in the following order:
"Japanese syllabary (ア、イ、ウ、エ、オ、... ン)" → "Alphabet (A, a, B, b, ...Z, z)" → "Space at the beginning of the reading" → "Numerals (0 through 9)" → "Symbols" → "No reading".
※The Memory No. Search searches in the order of the memory numbers.

About Phonebook List

When you search from "All?", "Reading?", "Group?", or "Memory No.?", the tabs appear on the top of the Phonebook list. With "All?" and "Reading?", the entries are sorted by every column of reading, with "Memory No.?" by every 100 of the memory number, and with "Group?" by every group.

Press ◎ to display the Phonebook entries in the tab at left or right. However, when there are 12 or more Phonebook entries in a tab, pressing 〖MENU〗(Page ▲), 〖📷〗(Page ▼), or ▲/▼ brings up the previous or next page.
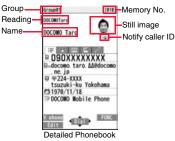
Phonebook list

- After you search by "Reading?", you can move the cursor to the "ア" through "ワ", "英", and "他" tab by pressing each numeric key from the list. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.
  <Example>Press 5 to display the "ナ" tab. Each time you press 5, the cursor moves to the top of "ニ" "ヌ" and so on.
- After you search by "Group?", you can move the cursor to the top of each column in the tab by pressing each numeric key from the list. When you successively press the same numeric key, you can move the cursor within the same column.
  <Example>Press 5 to move the cursor to the top of the "ナ" column. Each time you press 5, the cursor moves to the top of "ニ" "ヌ" and so on.
- After you search by "Memory No.?", you can move the cursor to the "000~" to "900~" tab by pressing each numeric key from the list.
  <Example>Press 5 to move the cursor to the "500~" tab.
- You can make a voice call to the phone number stored for the name highlighted on the Phonebook list, by pressing 〖📞〗. Also, press 〖✉〗(V.phone) to make a videophone call and press 〖🅱〗 to make a PushTalk call. When multiple phone numbers are stored for the name, the one stored first will be dialed.
- For the Phonebook entry stored on the UIM, " ▦ " is displayed.
- For the Phonebook entry stored with i-concier information, " 🗹 " is displayed.
- " 🅰 " appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, " 🅱 " appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and " 🅲 " appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)
- When you refer to the Phonebook from a GPS compatible i-αppli program, " 🗺 " appears for the Phonebook entries which contain the location information.

About the detailed display

Use ◎ to highlight a tab, then the detailed contents are displayed.

- For the Phonebook entry stored on the UIM, " ▦ " is displayed on the memory number field.
- When Notify Caller ID is set to "Notify caller", " 📞 " appears, and when set to "Don't notify", " 📞? " appears.
- Under the still image, " 🅰 " appears for the Phonebook entries set to A by Phonebook 2in1 Setting, " 🅱 " appears for the Phonebook entries set to B, and " 🅲 " appears for the Phonebook entries set to common data. (Only in Dual Mode)

Group — Reading — Name — Memory No. — Still image — Notify caller ID

Detailed Phonebook display (Item list)

- When a Phonebook entry contains the setting for Multi Number or Chaku-moji, the set contents are displayed in the Item list/Phone Number display.

☰ Item list
The first stored phone number, mail address, postal address, birthday, and memo are displayed. When i-concier information is stored, a postal address, URL, and memo obtained from i-concier are displayed instead of a postal address, birthday, and memo.

☎ Phone number

✉ Mail address
- When you select the item, you can compose an i-mode mail message with that mail address entered into the address field.

📋 Personal information
- When you select a postal address and select "YES", the GPS compatible i-αppli program set by "Select map" of "GPS settings" starts to show the map. When you highlight a postal address and press 〖✉〗(Detail), the full display appears.
- When you select the location information, the Function menu of the location information appears. (See page 327)
- When you select a memo or still image, the full display appears.

Phonebook

95

i-concier information
≥When you select a postal address and select "YES", the GPS compatible i-αppli program set by "Select map" of "GPS settings" starts to show the map. When you highlight a postal address and press (⊠)(Detail), the full display appears.
≥You can display a site or Internet web page when you select a URL, select "i-mode" or "Full Browser", and then select "YES". When you highlight a URL and press (⊠)(Detail), the full display appears.
≥When you select a memo, the full display appears.
≥If you have not subscribed to i-concier, the i-concier information tab does not appear.

Settings
≥When you select each item, a demo is played back.
Press (●)(Stop) or (CLR) to end the demo.

Function Menu of the Phonebook List

New	You can store a new Phonebook entry. Go to step 1 on page 88.
Attach to mail	You can send an i-mode mail message with the Phonebook entry attached. Go to step 2 on page 142.
Search location	You can access the site of "イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadoco kantan search)". ▶YES
Move/copy	
Copy to microSD	See page 370.
Connect to Center	See page 136.
Sort	You can change the display order. ▶Select a type of order. ≥You can sort Phonebook entries in reverse order by selecting "Ascending" or "Descending". ≥You cannot sort on the Phonebook list with tabs displayed.
Font size	You can switch font sizes for the Phonebook and on the displays within "Phonebook settings", etc. (See "Phonebook" on page 119)
Send Ir/ trans/BT	

Send Ir data	
Send phonebook	See page 384.
Send all phonebook	See page 385.
transmission	
Send phonebook	See page 387.
Send all phonebook	See page 387.
Send to Bluetooth	
Send phonebook	You can send the Phonebook entry using Bluetooth communication. ▶Select a Bluetooth device to be sent▶YES ≥When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search. ≥See page 424 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.
Send all phonebook	You can send all Phonebook entries using Bluetooth communication. ▶Select a Bluetooth device to be sent ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES ≥When "Session number setting" of "Bluetooth settings" is set to "ON", enter your Terminal Security Code and then a session number. ≥When no Bluetooth devices are registered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to search. ≥See page 424 for registering and connecting Bluetooth devices.
Delete data	See page 99.
Set secret/Release secret	You can activate/deactivate Secret for the Phonebook entry. ≥If you select "Set secret" in ordinary mode (not in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only"), enter your Terminal Security Code.

Information

<Send to Bluetooth>
- You cannot send Phonebook entries from the UIM.
- See page 421 for the Bluetooth function.

Function Menu of the Detailed Phonebook Display

Notify caller ID	See page 56.
Prefix numbers	See page 60.
Int'l dial assist	See page 59.
Select image	See page 75.
2in1 dial	You can select a phone number to notify the other party in Dual Mode of 2in1. (See page 452)
Multi number	You can select a phone number to be notified to the other party. (See page 449)
Chaku-moji	See page 55.
Search location	See page 96.

Edit data

Edit phonebook	Go to step 1 on page 98.
Sort phone number/ Sort mail address	▶Select a phone number or mail address ▶Use ○ to change the order▶●(　Select　) ●From the detailed display, press ○ to highlight an item to be sorted. The items you can select from the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted item. ●To change the order in succession, repeat the above steps. ▶⊠(　Finish　)
Store in P-Talk PB	You can store the phone number in the PushTalk Phonebook.

Move/copy

Copy to UIM	See page 419.
Copy to microSD	See page 370.
Copy to phone	See page 419.
Connect to Center	See page 136.

Copy item

Copy name	You can copy the name of Phonebook entry.
Copy phone number/ Copy mail add./ Copy address/ Copy location info/ Copy birthday/ Copy memo/Copy URL	You can copy each item of Phonebook entry. ●From the detailed display, press ○ to highlight an item to be copied. The items can be selected in the Function menu differ depending on the highlighted item.

Mail

Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message to send to the mail address. Go to step 3 on page 142.
Attach to mail	You can send an i-mode mail message with the Phonebook entry attached. Go to step 2 on page 142.
Compose SMS	You can compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 186.
Font size	You can switch the font size for the Phonebook and on the displays within "Phonebook settings", etc. (See "Phonebook" on page 119)
Restrictions	See page 133.

Secret code	You need to add the recipient's secret code when sending i-mode mail to anyone who has registered a secret code. Once you set the secret code for the mail address in the Phonebook entry, it will be added automatically whenever you send mail to that address. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**Set code** ●From the detailed display, press ⊙ to highlight a phone number or mail address to be set with a secret code. ●To check the secret code, select "Check code". ●To release the secret code, select "Release code". ▶**Enter a four-digit secret code**▶**YES** ●In the Function menu, "Secret code" is indicated by "★", after it is set. ●Enter a four-digit number for secret code. You cannot set "0000".
Add desktop icon	See page 31.
Send Ir/ 🔲 trans/BT	
Send Ir data	
Send phonebook	See page 384.
Send all phonebook	See page 385.
🔲 transmission	
Send phonebook	See page 387.
Send all phonebook	See page 387.
Send to Bluetooth	
Send phonebook	See page 96.
Send all phonebook	See page 96.
Delete data	See page 99.

Set secret/Release secret See page 96.

Information

<Secret code>

●You cannot set secret codes for UIM Phonebook entries.

●The secret code can be added only when the recipient's mail address is in the form of "phone number" or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp". It cannot be added to any other form of mail address.

●If you have stored the mail address as "phone number＋secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail messages from the party of that mail address. After changing the mail address to "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", set the secret code.

<Edit Phonebook>
Editing Phonebook Entries

1 **Detailed Phonebook display**▶MENU(■Edit■)
▶**Select an item to be edited**▶**Edit the contents.**

●See step 2 on page 88 for how to edit the Phonebook entry.
●Even if you edit the Phonebook entry in the FOMA terminal (Phone), you can remain the original contents in the original location and store the edited contents in the different location by changing the memory number.

2 ⊠(■Finish■)▶**YES**

●If you edited the UIM Phonebook entry, select "Overwrite" to overwrite the original contents, or "Add" to save the contents as a new entry.

<Delete Data>
Deleting Phonebook Entries

Delete from the Detailed Phonebook Display

**1 Detailed Phonebook display▶︎📕α(　FUNC　)▶︎Delete data
▶︎Do the following operations.**

Phone number/ This item	**▶︎YES** ●Highlight an item to be deleted by pressing ⬤ from the detailed display. ●You cannot delete information obtained by i-concier.
This phonebook	**▶︎YES**

Delete from the Phonebook List

**1 Phonebook list▶︎📕α(　FUNC　)▶︎Delete data
▶︎Do the following operations.**

Delete this	**▶︎YES**
Delete selected	**▶︎Put a check mark for Phonebook entries to be deleted** **▶︎☑(Finish)▶︎YES** ●You can check or uncheck entries all at once by pressing 📕α(　FUNC　) and selecting "Select all in tab/Select all/Release all in tab/Release all". ●Perform the same operation as that of "Delete all" when you have selected all Phonebook entries including secret ones.
Delete all in tab	You can delete all the Phonebook entries for the displayed tab. **▶︎YES**
Delete all	You can delete all Phonebook entries including secret entries. **▶︎Enter your Terminal Security Code▶︎YES▶︎YES**

Information
●When you delete a Phonebook entry that is stored in the PushTalk Phonebook, the PushTalk Phonebook entry is also deleted.

<No. of Phonebook>
Checking Phonebook Storage Status

1 MENU▶︎Phonebook▶︎No. of phonebook

Phone

Phonebook. . . The number of Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone)

Secret. . . . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored as secret data (Displayed in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only)

Image . . . . . . The number of Phonebook entries in which still images are stored

Chara-den . . . The number of Phonebook entries in which Chara-den images are stored

PushTalk . . . . The number of Phonebook entries stored in the PushTalk Phonebook

Voice dial . . . . The number of Phonebook entries set as voice dial entries

Rest . . . . 📞: The number of phone numbers that can still be stored
　　　　　　　　 ✉: The number of mail addresses that can still be stored

UIM

Phonebook. . . The number of Phonebook entries stored on the UIM
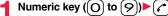
Information
●When you use 2in1, the number of Phonebook entries for the mode in use is displayed. (See page 453)

<2-touch Dial>
Making a Call with a Few Keys Operation

When the entry is stored in memory number "000" through "009" in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook, you can dial the phone number just by pressing the lowest one digit of memory number and 📞.

1 Numeric key (⓪ to ⑨)▶︎📞 or ⬤(　Dial　)
●You can make a videophone call by pressing ☑(V.phone) or a PushTalk call by pressing 🅱.

Information

- When the Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the first phone number will be dialed.
- When you set "Restrict dialing" to a Phonebook entry of memory number 000 through 009, set it to the first phone number in the Phonebook entry.
- When you store a Phonebook entry of memory number from 000 through 009 as secret data, make a call to that entry in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.

<Voice Dial>

Accessing Phonebook Entries by Voice

Just vocalize the other party's voice dial name and then the Phonebook entry is accessed for making a call.

Voice Dial Setting
MENU 2 6

You can store up to 100 voice dial entries selecting from among the Phonebook entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone).

1 MENU▶Phonebook▶Phonebook settings
▶Voice dial setting▶<New>

- You can edit the stored voice dial name by pressing ⊠(Edit). Go to step 3.
- To delete the stored voice dial entry, press ⓘ☆(FUNC) and select "Delete" or "Delete all" and then select "YES".

2 Search the Phonebook▶Select a Phonebook entry.

The display for search method you used last time appears.
- The "★" mark is added to the Phonebook entry stored in the Voice Dial list.

3 Enter a voice dial name.

- You can enter up to 22 half-pitch katakana characters.
- The reading (katakana only) of the Phonebook entry is displayed as the voice dial name. Correct the name to the easy-to-identify words.

Information

- The voice dial name set by this function is effective only for calling up a voice dial entry. For the voice guidance function, the reading (name) stored in the Phonebook is read aloud.
- When multiple similar voice dial names are stored or when the voice dial name is short, the recognition rate lowers and a wrong voice dial entry (Phonebook entry) might be accessed. In this case, rename the existing voice dial name and store it.
- You cannot store "ボイスセッテイ (Boisusettei)" as a voice dial name.

Dial from Phonebook by Voice
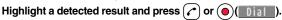
By your voice, you can access the Phonebook entry you set in the Voice Dial list. When "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON" and "Voice dial" is checked, the operation is guided by the voice guidance.

1 ⌒(for at least one second)
▶As soon as the voice recognition start tone sounds, vocalize the voice dial name.

Start vocalizing within four seconds after the voice recognition start tone sounds. Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.
- You cannot change the volume of the voice recognition start tone. The voice recognition start tone does not sound during Manner Mode.
- If you say the word "ボイス設定 (Boisusettei)", the display of "Voice settings" appears. (See page 101)
- When "Auto voice dial" is set to "ON", the display for Auto Voice Dial appears after the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry. Then about two seconds later, the FOMA terminal automatically dials out.

2 Highlight a detected result and press ⌒ or ●(Dial).

The first phone number in the selected Phonebook entry is dialed.
- You can show the detailed Phonebook display by pressing ⊠(Detail). Highlight a phone number and press ⌒ or ●(Dial) to make a voice call. Also, you can make a videophone call by pressing ⊠(V. phone) or a PushTalk call by pressing 🔲.

Information

- When you vocalize, keep your mouth away from the microphone about 10 cm. If your voice is too distant, it may be difficult to recognize your voice.
- Pronounce the voice dial name as clearly as possible.
- Before and after voice production, avoid making the sounds unrelated to the voice dial name such as clearing your throat, clicking your tongue, noisy breathing or other noise.
- Vocalize in quiet, noise-free locations.
- While vocalizing, do not put your fingers over the microphone, or press or brush the keys.

To access a voice dial entry using an earphone/microphone

You need to set "Voice headset dial" to "ON" and open the FOMA terminal in advance.

1 Press and hold the switch of the earphone/microphone (option) for at least one second.

2 Perform the operations of "Dial from Phonebook by Voice" on page 100.
- You can make a call also by pressing the switch of the earphone/microphone instead of pressing $\frown$ or $\bullet$.

To access a voice dial entry using a Bluetooth device

You need to set "Voice headset dial" to "ON" in advance, and connect with the Bluetooth device using the Headset service or Hands-free service.
- For using the Hands-free service, the Bluetooth device needs to support a voice recognition function.

1 Press the switch of the Bluetooth device.
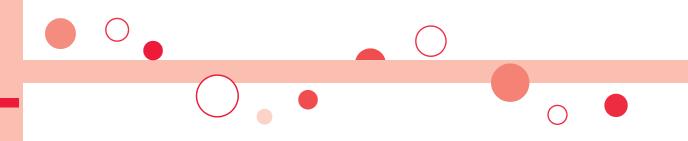
2 Access a voice dial entry following the voice guidance.
Once the voice is recognized as a voice dial entry, the detected result is displayed.
- The FOMA terminal automatically dials out about two seconds after the voice guidance informing of dialing finishes.

Voice Settings

1 MENU ▶ Set./Service ▶ Other settings ▶ Voice settings ▶ Do the following operations.

Auto voice dial	You can automatically make a call to the phone number accessed by voice. ▶ **ON or OFF**
Voice headset dial	You can access the voice dial entries by using an earphone/microphone (option) or Wireless Earphone Set 02 (option). ▶ **ON or OFF**
Read aloud settings	See page 402.
Read aloud volume	See page 403.
Read aloud speed	See page 403.
Read aloud output	See page 403.
Read aloud valid set.	See page 403.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

<Select Ring Tone>
Changing Ring Tone

You can set a ring tone for each incoming type.
If you select an i-motion movie, the i-motion movie and sound are played back for incoming calls/messages. (Chaku-motion)

●The ring tone is the PCM sound source, chord of 128 tones, and ADPCM compliant.
●See "Add to Phonebook" on page 88 for setting a ring tone by Phonebook entry, and see "Group Setting" on page 93 for setting it by group.

■**Ring Tone List (pre-installed)**

Display	Title	Name of Lyricist/Composer
Pattern 1	—	—
Pattern 2	—	—
Pattern 3	—	—
Pattern 4	—	—
Pattern 5	—	—
HEIGH HO // SNOW WHI	HEIGH HO // SNOW WHITE AND THE SEVEN DWARFS /INST	Composer: CHURCHILL FRANK E
SYMFONIE NR 9 Z NOVE	SYMFONIE NR 9 Z NOVEHO SVETA OP 95	Composer: DVORAK ANTONIN
SONATINE※	SONATINE	Composer: WOLFGANG AMADEUS MOZART
Techno	Techno	—
PARADE OF THE WOODEN※	PARADE OF THE WOODEN SOLDIERS	Composer: JESSEL LEON
SUMMERTIME※	SUMMERTIME	Composer: GERSHWIN GEORGE
SOMEDAY MY PRINCE WI	SOMEDAY MY PRINCE WILL COME	Composer: CHURCHILL FRANK E
PEER GYNT SUITE NR 1※	PEER GYNT SUITE NR 1 OP 46/ MORGENSTEMNING	Composer: GRIEG EDVARD HAGERUP
KIRAKIRA	—	—
Electrical	—	—
Acoustic Guitar	—	—
Minimal	—	—
Magical Stick	—	—

Display	Title	Name of Lyricist/Composer
Smart Beep	—	—
Ukulele	—	—
Waterdrop	—	—

※ 3D sound is supported. See page 105 for 3D sound.

(Note) The names of lyricists and composers are described conforming to the JASRAC web page.
Whole part of long titles may not be displayed due to restriction of the display size.

■**i-motion (pre-installed)**

Display	Title	Name of Lyricist/Composer
「マンマ・ミーア！」 予告編	—	—

●You cannot set the pre-installed i-motion "「マンマ・ミーア！」予告編 (Preview of [MAMMA MIA!])" for a ring tone.

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Sound**▶**Select ring tone**
▶**Select an incoming type.**

●Select an item and press ☒(**Play**) to check the contents actually played back or displayed.

2 **Select ring tone**▶**Select a type of ring tone.**

Melody . . . . Sets a melody as a ring tone.
MUSIC . . . . Sets a Chaku-uta Full® music file as a ring tone.
⅛ motion . . . . Sets an i-motion movie as a ring tone. (Chaku-motion/ Chaku-uta®)
Voice announce . . . Sets the sound recorded by "Voice announce" as a ring tone. The setting is completed.
OFF . . . . Sets a ring tone off. The setting is completed.

3 **Select a folder**▶**Select a ring tone.**

●If you select "MUSIC" in step 2, select "Fullsong ring tone" or "Point ring tone". (See page 284)
●See page 201 when you select "Search by i-mode".

Information

- You can set the Call Receiving display by selecting "Phone" or "Videophone", and then by selecting "Select calling disp.". Go to step 2 on page 112.
- You can set the Mail Receiving display by selecting "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF", and then by selecting "Select receiving disp.". Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.
- The priority order of ring tones is as follows: "Read aloud settings" → "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select ring tone" ("Set as ring tone" of "Multi number" when a call comes in to the additional number, and "Ring tone set. for No. B" of "2in1 setting" when a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1).
- The ring tone or images set at purchase might be played back or displayed for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Display setting".
- See " ᵢ motion info" to check whether the i-motion movie can be set for a ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a mail ring tone, you can press CLR or others to stop the ring tone.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back taking priority over "Display setting". However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie for the ring tone, the image set by "Display setting" is displayed.
- When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over this function for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for this function is played back for incoming calls.
- You cannot set an i-motion movie which contains video for "PushTalk" or "i-concier".
- When different types of mail — i-mode mail, SMS messages, chat mail, or Messages R/F — are received at the same time, the priority order of ring tone as follows: "Chat mail" → "i-mode mail/SMS" → "MessageR" → "MessageF". If you receive the same type of mail simultaneously, the ring tone corresponding to the mail you have received last works.
- For melodies downloaded, attached to mail, or prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA terminal, a playing part may be specified in advance. When a play-part-specified melody is set for a ring tone, only the specified part is played back.

<Melody Effect>   MENU 6 4
Setting Sound Effects of Ring Tone or Melody

You can set whether to add stereophonic sound effects to the playback tone of melodies and i-motion movies, ring tones, and effect tones.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Sound▶Melody effect
▶Do the following operations.

Stereo&3DSound	You can play back 3-dimensional sound from a stereo earphone (option). This is effective for the i-αppli effect tones or ring tones. ▶ON or OFF
Position to play	You can set the play start position of the melody that has been set for the ring tone or alarm tone. ▶Select an item. **Play all**. . . . . Plays back from the beginning of the melody. **Play portion** . . . Plays back from the start position set for the melody.

3D Sound

3D Sound is a function that creates stereophonic sound and spatially-moving sound through the use of a stereo earphone. 3D Sound compatible i-αppli games, ring tones, and i-motion movies enable you to enjoy live-like feeling of sounds.

Information

- Stereognostic sense might differ depending on the person. If you feel strange, switch "Stereo&3DSound" to "OFF".

Informing You of an Incoming Call by Vibration

You can set the vibrator to notify you of incoming calls and mail.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Incoming call**▶**Vibrator**
▶**Select an incoming type**▶**Select a vibration pattern.**

Pattern 1 . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 0.5 second) and off (about 0.5 second).
Pattern 2 . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 1 second) and off (about 1 second).
Pattern 3 . . . . Alternates between vibration on (about 3 seconds) and off (about 1 second).
Melody linkage . . . Vibrates in time with the vibration pattern stored in the melody.
OFF . . . . Does not vibrate.

≥While selecting a vibration pattern, you can check the selected vibration. However, you cannot check the vibration when you select "Melody linkage".
≥The following icons are displayed on the Stand-by display while "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF":

⟨V⟩ : You set "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone".

⟨V⟩ : You set "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".

⟨V⟩ : You set "Phone", "PushTalk", or "Videophone", and set "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", or "i-concier".

Information

≥The priority order of vibrators is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Vibrator".
≥Even when "Melody linkage" is set, the FOMA terminal vibrates with "Pattern 2" if an i-motion movie or melody with no vibration pattern is set for the ring tone.
≥Be careful not to leave the FOMA terminal on a desk or similar places with the vibrator activated; when a call comes in, the FOMA terminal might move and fall by vibration.

Using Recorded Sound as Ring Tone

You can set the sound recorded with the FOMA terminal for a ring tone (including a ring tone for Number B of 2in1), On-hold tone/Holding tone, alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", and "TV timer", and answer message for Record Message.
You can record only one item for about 15 seconds.

1 MENU▶**LifeKit**▶**Rec.msg/voice memo**▶**Voice announce**
▶**Record**

≥To suspend recording midway, press ◉(Stop), ⌒, or CLR. The contents recorded to that point are saved.
≥The tone beeps about 5 seconds before the recording time (for about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the tone beeps twice, and the former display returns.
≥The recording is suspended when a call comes in, when an alarm for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "TV timer", or "Timer recording" sounds, or when you switch displays using Multitask while recording. (The contents recorded to that point are saved.)
≥To play back the recorded sound, select "Play". To suspend playback midway, press ◉(Stop), ⌒, or CLR.
≥To erase the recorded sound, select "Erase", then select "YES".

<Melody Call Setting>

Changing Ringback Tone

Melody Call is a service that enables you to change the ringback tone phone the callers hear to a melody you like.
For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
≥Melody Call is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Incoming call**▶**Melody Call setting**
▶**YES**▶**Operate following the instructions on the display.**

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Information

- ●Melody Call is not available for incoming videophone calls and PushTalk calls.
- ●When you select "YES" from the confirmation display asking whether to connect to the site, the line is connected to the i-mode site. You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the site for settings, however, you are charged for connecting to the IP site, i-mode menu site, and free melody corner.

<Keypad Sound>
Setting Keypad Sound

MENU 3 0

1 MENU ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Keypad sound** ▶ **ON or OFF**

Information

- ●You cannot change the volume for keypad sound.
- ●If you set this function to "OFF", the battery level tone (see page 42) and respective warning tones do not sound.
- ●The keypad does not make a sound when you press ▲/▼, while the phone is ringing, or during playback of a movie or i-motion movie.

<Speed Selector Sound>
Setting Speed Selector Sound

1 MENU ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Speed selector sound** ▶ **Select a pattern.**

- ●While selecting a pattern, you can check the selected sound.

Information

- ●You cannot change the volume for speed selector sound.
- ●The speed selector does not make a sound while the phone is ringing, during a call, or during playback of a movie or i-motion movie.

<Charge Sound>
Setting Charging-start/end Tones

The confirmation tone sounds twice when charging starts/ends.

1 MENU ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Other settings** ▶ **Battery** ▶ **Charge sound** ▶ **ON or OFF**

Information

- ●You cannot change the volume for charge sound.
- ●The charging confirmation tone does not sound when a display other than the Stand-by display is shown or during Manner Mode or Public Mode (Drive Mode).

<Quality Alarm>
Sounding Alarm when a Line is Nearly Disconnecting

MENU 7 5

When a call is nearly disconnecting midway due to bad radio wave conditions, an alarm sounds to inform you right before disconnection.

1 MENU ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Talk** ▶ **Quality alarm** ▶ **Select an alarm.**

No tone . . . . . Does not sound.
High tone . . . . High alarm sounds.
Low tone . . . . Low alarm sounds.

Information

- ●You might be disconnected without hearing an alarm if radio wave conditions deteriorate suddenly.

<Mail/Message Ring Time>
MENU 6 8

Setting Ring Time for Mail and Messages R/F

You can set the duration of the ring tone which sounds for incoming i-mode mail, SMS messages, Chat mail, Messages R/F, and i-concier information.

1 MENU ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Mail/Msg. ring time**
   ▶ **Select a type of mail or message** ▶ **ON or OFF**
   ▶ **Enter a ring time (seconds).**

   ●Enter in two digits from "01" through "30".

<Headset Usage Setting>
MENU 5 1

Sounding Ring Tone from Earphone Only

You can set from where you sound the ring tone and alarm for when you connect an earphone/microphone (option).

1 MENU ▶ **Set./Service** ▶ **Sound** ▶ **Headset usage setting**
   ▶ **Headset and speaker or Headset only**

Information
●Even when you set to "Headset only", the ring tone sounds from both the earphone and speaker about 20 seconds after ringing starts. However, the tone does not sound from the speaker but sounds from the earphone only even after 20 seconds have elapsed if the tone sounds for the operations other than incoming calls, incoming mail, and alarm notification.
●Even when you set to "Headset only", the tone sounds from the speaker when any earphone/microphone is not connected or at the start of shooting still images or movies.

Information
●In the following cases, the tone sounds from the earphone when an earphone/microphone is connected, and from the speaker when it is not connected, regardless of this setting:
 ・While watching a 1Seg program
 ・During playback of a video file
 ・During playback of an i-motion movie
 ・During playback of a PC movie
 ・During playback of a melody
 ・While an i-αppli program is running
 ・During playback of a music file by MUSIC Player
 ・During playback of a Music&Video Channel program
●Do not wind the cord of the earphone/microphone around the FOMA terminal.
●The FOMA terminal may pick up noise if you take the cord of the earphone/microphone close to the FOMA terminal during a call.

<Manner Mode>

Muting Tones from FOMA Terminal

Just by pressing a key, you can set to mute tones such as a ring tone and keypad sound from the FOMA terminal.
You can use "Manner mode set" to select Manner Mode functions from three types; "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "Original".
While "Manner mode" or "Super silent" is activated, or while "Mic sensitiv." is set to "Up" in "Original", you can talk softly on the phone but your voice can still be heard clearly at the other end.
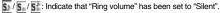
1 **During standby/During a call** ▶ # **(for at least one second)**

   Manner mode selected in "Manner mode set" is set.
   ●When the FOMA terminal is closed, press and hold ▲ for at least one second to activate Manner Mode. While a PushTalk call is arriving, press # or ▼ to activate Manner Mode.
   ●During Manner Mode, " " is displayed. The settings you selected for "Manner mode set" are also displayed.
     V : Indicates that "Vibrator" will work to notify events.
     S / S / S : Indicate that "Ring volume" has been set to "Silent".

Information
●If you activate Manner Mode during a call or calling, the message to that effect appears.
●The recording start tone sounds even in Manner Mode when you shoot still images or movies.

Information

- ≥In Manner Mode, if you try to play back a melody, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play it back. Select "YES" to play back the melody at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". If the setting is "Silent" or "Step", the volume is Level 2.
- ≥In Manner Mode, if you do the following operations, the confirmation display appears asking whether to play back voice or music.
  - · Watching a 1Seg program
  - · Playing back an i-motion movie
  - · Playing back a video file
  - · Playing back a PC movie
  - · Playing back a music file by MUSIC Player
  - · Playing back a Music&Video Channel program

  Select "YES" to play it back at the volume set for each player. When you change the volume level, it is played back at the set volume for the next time.
- ≥When an earphone/microphone (option) is connected, the sound comes out of the earphone. The confirmation display asking whether to play back sound or music files during Manner Mode does not appear. Further, the playback tone does not sound from the speaker even if you unplug the earphone/microphone while playing back sound or music files by each player.

To release Manner Mode

Press and hold $\boxed{\#}$ for at least one second. During a call or calling, two beeps sound and the message that is released appears.
- ≥When the FOMA terminal is closed, you can release Manner Mode also by pressing and holding $\boxed{\blacktriangle}$ for at least one second.

<Manner Mode Set>
MENU ② ◎
Selecting Manner Mode Type

You can select one of three types of operations for Manner Mode.

■**Operations during Manner Mode**

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Record message	Set value of Record message		ON or OFF
Vibrator※1	ON		ON or OFF
Phone volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step①
Mail volume	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step②
Alarm volume※2	Silent		Silent through Level 6 and step
Memo tone	ON	OFF	ON or OFF③
Keypad sound	OFF		ON or OFF④
Speed selector sound	OFF		Pattern 1 through Pattern 3 and OFF
Microphone sensitivity	Up		Normal or Up
Low voltage alarm tone (Low battery alarm)	OFF		ON or OFF When "LV alarm tone" is set to "ON", it works with the same set value as ①.※3
Confirmation tone for selecting ring tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①·②.
On hold tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※4
Holding tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※5
ToruCa-received tone and ToruCa failed-to-receive tone	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.
Confirmation tone for recording voice announce	ON	OFF	Works with the same set value as ③.
Battery level tone	Silent		Silent
Voice recognition start tone	Silent		Silent
Playback tones of attached melody	Silent		Silent
Effect tones of Decome-Anime	Silent		Silent
Warning tones	Silent		Works with the same set value as ④.
Schedule alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.
ToDo alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.
TV timer alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※6

	Manner Mode	Super Silent	Original
Timer recording alarm	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※7
Start tones for shooting still images and movies	Level 4		Level 4
Confirmation tone for selecting shutter sound	OFF		Works with the same set value as ①.※4
Switching to Hands-free by "Hands-free w/ V. phone" or "Hands-free w/ PushTalk"	OFF		OFF
Read aloud volume	Silent		Silent
Effect tones of Flash movies	Silent		Silent
Effect tones at the start of i-Widget	Silent		Works with the same set value as ①.※4

※1 Ring tones and alarm tones for "Alarm", "Schedule", "ToDo", "TV timer" and "Timer recording" are notified by the vibration.
The vibration pattern is the same as the setting you set on page 106. However, if the setting you set on page 106 is "OFF", "Pattern 2" applies.
※2 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 405 is set to "OFF", the tone sounds at the volume set for Alarm.
※3 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is "Silent".
※4 The tone sounds at Level 2 when ① is "Step".
※5 The tone sounds at Level 1 when ① is not "Silent".
※6 When "Prefer manner mode" on page 262 is set to "OFF", the tone sounds at the volume set for TV Timer.
※7 The tone does not sound when ① is "Step".

You can select from among standard "Manner mode" to inform you of incoming calls or mail by the vibrator, "Super silent" to erase sounds including confirmation tones from the earpiece, or "Original" to customize operations.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Incoming call▶Manner mode set
▶Manner mode, Super silent or Original
▶Do the following operations.

Record msg.	▶ON or OFF ●Even if you select "ON", the ring time is fixed to about 13 seconds and cannot be changed when "Record message setting" on page 69 is set to "OFF". ●See page 69 for Record Message Setting.
Vibrator	You can set the FOMA terminal to vibrate for incoming calls and mail. ▶ON or OFF ●See page 106 for Vibrator.
Phone vol.	You can adjust the ring volume for incoming voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls. ▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume. ●See page 66 for Ring Volume.
Mail vol.	You can adjust the ring volume for i-mode mail, SMS messages, Messages R/F, and i-concier information. ▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume. ●See page 66 for Ring Volume.
Alarm vol.	▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume. ●See page 404 for Alarm.
Memo tone	You can set the FOMA terminal to sound a confirmation tone when a record message is played back, a voice memo is recorded or played back, and a movie memo is recorded. ▶ON or OFF
Keypad sound	▶ON or OFF ●See page 107 for Keypad Sound.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

110

Selector sound	▶**Select a pattern.**
	●See page 107 for Speed Selector Sound.
Mic sensitiv.	▶**Normal or Up**
LV alarm tone	▶**ON or OFF**
	●See page 42 for LV Alarm Tone (low battery alarm).

2 Press ⌨(Finish).

<Display Setting>
Changing Displays   MENU 5 6

Set Stand-by Display

You can set an image for the Stand-by display. You can set also i-motion movies shot by the FOMA terminal or downloaded from sites for the Stand-by display.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Display setting**
▶**Stand-by display**▶**Select a type of image.**

●If you select "Calendar/schedule", select a display format, and then select "BG image ON" or "BG image OFF". If you select "BG image OFF", the setting is completed.
●If you select " ⅗ αppli display", select an i-αppli program. The setting is completed.

2 Select a folder▶**Select an image.**

●On the Stand-by display, the image smaller than the display is shown in equivalent dimensions or enlarged to fit to the display size, depending on the image size.
●See page 201 when you select "Search by i-mode".

When Calendar/Schedule is set

You can display schedule events of the day (up to 10) or calendar in the set format on the Stand-by display. You can check the schedule events or calendar and can set schedule events (see page 407) with ease.
You can access the schedule events or calendar by pressing ⊙ from the Stand-by display. Highlight an item to be operated and press ⊙(Select).

●When you select a schedule event, you can confirm the previous or next schedule events by pressing ⊙.
You can display the detailed schedule display by pressing ⊙(Select).
●When you select the calendar, you can display the previous or next calendar by pressing ⊙.
You can set a schedule event by pressing ⊙(Select).

11/18 (Wed) 10:00

◆ 10:30 Golf practice
♭ 12:30 Lunch

For
"Calendar+schedule"

When an original animation or animation GIF is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press ⌢ from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA terminal. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.

When a Flash movie is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press ⌢ from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA terminal. The image stopped such as by pressing ⌢ during playback of a Flash movie is displayed as the Stand-by display.

●When a Flash movie which shows a clock or the like is set, the date/time is not updated during pause. When you play back the Flash movie by pressing ⌢, the date/time is corrected.

When an i-motion movie is set

It is played back when you display the Stand-by display, press ⌢ from the Stand-by display, or open the FOMA terminal. The first frame is displayed as the Stand-by display.
●Press ⊙ or ▲/▼ during playback to adjust the volume.
Press ⊙, ⌨, ⅈα, MENU, 🎥, ⊙, CLR, ⌢, 🄱 or ⌢ to end the playback.
●If you play back an i-motion movie during Manner Mode, the sound is not played back.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

111

Not to display icons on the Stand-by display

Press ⌢ from the Stand-by display.

Calendar, schedule events, status icons, notification icons, and desktop icons are cleared. Press ⌢ again to show the icons and others.

When a Flash movie is set for the Stand-by display, however, the following operations are performed:

· When you press ⌢ during playback of a Flash movie, the playback pauses.
  Press ⌢ again to clear the icons and others.

Information

●The schedule list shows the today's schedule events whose start time has not come, and the today's schedule events set as "All day". Holidays are not displayed.

●Some i-motion movies might not be correctly displayed.

●You cannot set a still image larger than the Stand-by (480 x 854) size or in excess of 300 Kbytes for the Stand-by display.

●You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Stand-by display.

●The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

●When you show the Stand-by display, the Flash movies such as a clock and the animation GIF files stop moving after a certain period of playback.

Set the Wake-up Display

You can set an image or message to be displayed for when the power is turned on.

1 **MENU▶Set./Service▶Display▶Display setting
▶Wake-up display▶Select a type of image.**

●If you select "Message", enter a message. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch/100 half-pitch characters.

●If you select "My picture" or "⅛ motion", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.

●See page 201 when you select "Search by i-mode".

Information

●You cannot set some images or i-motion movies for the Wake-up display.

●The sound of Flash movies cannot be played back.

Set Displays for Dialing/Calling and Others

You can set an image for the Dialing/Call Receiving display, Mail Sending/Mail Receiving display, and Checking display.

1 **MENU▶Set./Service▶Display▶Display setting
▶Select a type of display.**

●When "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" is selected, select "Select calling disp.".

●When "Mail receiving" is selected, select "Select receiving disp." and go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.

●If you select "Dialing", "Videophone dialing", "Mail sending", "Check new messages", or "Mail/msg. rcpt result", go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.

●Select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming" or "Mail receiving" and press ⌨(Play) to check the contents actually displayed or played back.

2 **Select a type of image.**

Go to step 2 of "Set Stand-by Display" on page 111.

Information

●When you select "Incoming call", "Videophone incoming", or "Mail receiving", select "Select ring tone" to set the ring tone. Go to step 2 on page 104.

●The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Disp. PH-book image" → "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.
The same order applies if a call comes in to Number B while using 2in1. However, when you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion) by "Ringtone set. for No. B", it is played back as Chaku-motion, taking priority over this function.

●When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for a ring tone (Chaku-motion), it is played back for incoming calls, taking priority over this function. However, if you set a voice-only i-motion movie, the image set by this function is displayed.

●When you set an i-motion movie containing video and sound for "Select calling disp.", the i-motion movie is played back taking priority over "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" for incoming calls. However, if you set an i-motion movie containing only video for "Select calling disp.", the ring tone selected for "Select ring tone" of "Incoming call" is played back.

Information

- ●The images or ring tone set at purchase might be displayed or played back for incoming calls or messages, depending on the combination of this function and "Select ring tone".
- ●You cannot set some images for "Display setting".
- ●The sound of Flash movies is not played back.

Set Battery Icon and Antenna Icon

You can set the icons for battery level and radio wave reception level that appear on the display.

1 `MENU`▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Display setting**
▶**Battery icon or Antenna icon**▶**Select a folder**
▶**Select an image.**

- ●You cannot change icons such as "🔋" or "self".

Information

- ●The image you can set for battery icons is a GIF image of 42 x 25 dots. (A battery icon is composed of an image of 14 x 25 dots.)
- ●The image you can set for antenna icons is a GIF image of 44 x 50 dots. (An antenna icon is composed of an image of 22 x 25 dots.)

Show Icons in Color/Monochrome

1 `MENU`▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Display setting**
▶**Icon color**▶**Color or Monochrome**

- ●You cannot change the battery icon and antenna icon.

<Display Phonebook Image>

Displaying an Image Stored in Phonebook during Ringing

If the caller ID notified by the caller matches the phone number stored in the Phonebook, the still image stored in the Phonebook is displayed.

1 `MENU`▶**Set./Service**▶**Incoming call**
▶**Disp. PH-book image**▶**ON or OFF**

Information

- ●The priority order of displays for call receiving is as follows: "Picture for Phonebook entry" → "Picture for group" → "Image for Phonebook entry" → "Display setting". However, when "Incoming call" or "Videophone incoming" of "Read aloud settings" is set to "ON", the default image is displayed.

<Received Mail/Call at Open>

Displaying Arrival Information by Opening FOMA Terminal

When you have a missed call, new mail message, new chat mail message, or new Message R/F, the detailed Missed Call display/Inbox list/Chat Mail display/Message R/F list is displayed at opening the FOMA terminal.

1 `MENU`▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Recv. mail/call at open**
▶**ON or OFF**

Information

- ●When newly received messages and missed calls are found, the detailed Missed Call display appears.
- ●When a new mail message, chat mail, Message R/F are simultaneously received, the messages are displayed in the order of the chat mail message, i-mode message, Message R, and Message F.

<Backlight>   `MENU` `7` `0`

Setting Lights for Display and Keypad

1 `MENU`▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Backlight**
▶**Do the following operations.**

Lighting	You can set whether to light the backlight in ordinary time.
	▶**ON or OFF**
	●If you set to "OFF", "●" appears on the Stand-by display.
	Also, you can set whether to activate Power Saver Mode for the display.
	▶**ON or OFF**▶**Enter a light time (seconds).**
	●Enter from "060" through "999" in three digits.

Charging	▶**Standard or Long time light**
	Standard . . . . Lights during charging in the same setting as it lights in ordinary time.
	Long time light . . . When 15 seconds elapse without any operation during changing, the backlight switches to Level 1, and when 3 hours elapse, it switches to Power Saver Mode.
	≥When an AC adapter (option) or another device is connected, the backlight lights following the setting of this function even after charging is completed.
Area	You can set the range the backlight lights in.
	▶**LCD+Keys or LCD**
Brightness	You can adjust the brightness of the backlight for the display to Level 1 (dark) through Level 5 (bright).
	▶**Select a brightness level.**
	≥When "Auto setting" is set, the backlight set by "Area" is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness that has been detected by the light sensor.
Soft light	You can set whether to light the backlight softly for the display.
	▶**ON or OFF**
	≥Even if you set to "OFF", the backlight might light softly for some functions.

To switch the backlight on/off by pressing one key

Press and hold $\boxed{5}$ for at least one second.

≥While a Decome-Anime message is displayed, an i-αppli program is running, a Flash movie is displayed, or you are entering characters, you cannot switch the backlight on/off by pressing and holding $\boxed{5}$ for at least one second.

Information

≥When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight stays lit while a call is coming in and the area specified by "Area" lights for about 15 seconds when you turn on the power, touch the keys, or open the FOMA terminal. The backlight stays lit while the camera is activated or a movie/i-motion movie is played back. When "OFF" is set, it does not light. However, it stays lit during recording of a movie regardless of the "Lighting" setting.

≥See page 74 for Backlight during a videophone call.

≥See page 266 for Backlight for while watching a 1Seg program.

Information

≥When you display the text of i-mode mail or Messages R/F, the lighting time varies according to the length of the text.

≥If "Power saver mode" is set to "ON" and the specified time elapses without doing any operations, the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saver Mode and the display goes off. However, the FOMA terminal might not switch to Power Saver Mode depending on the function in use.

≥When a Flash movie or an i-motion movie is set for the Stand-by display, the Stand-by display changes to Power Saver Mode after ending the playback and a standby time elapses.

≥The display appears when you operate the FOMA terminal, receive a call, or receive i-Channel tickers. However, the receiving display does not appear when you receive a call in Public Mode (Drive Mode).

<LCD AI>
Adjusting Quality of Display Automatically

You can set whether to automatically adjust the brightness of the display backlight and to compensate the image quality according to that brightness during playback of i-motion movies, PC movies, Music&Video Channel programs, or video files, during a videophone call, or while watching a 1Seg program.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**LCD AI**▶**ON or OFF**

≥If you operate the setting from the Function menu during a videophone call or watching a 1Seg program, the setting is effective only for the current videophone call or 1Seg program.

Information

≥If you set to "ON", the brightness is adjusted within the level specified for "Brightness" of "Backlight". The brightness is adjusted also while you are selecting a menu item.

≥This function is disabled during Play Background.

<View Blind>

Making Display Hard to See from People Around

You can adjust the contrast of the display so that it is hardly viewed from a slanted angle.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**View blind**▶**ON or OFF**
▶**Select a contrast.**

●When "ON" is set, "⬚" appears on the Stand-by display.
●While selecting a contrast level, you can check the selected contrast on the display.

To switch View Blind on/off by pressing one key

Press and hold ⑧ for at least one second.
●While a Decome-Anime message is displayed, an i-αppli program is running, a Flash movie is displayed, a PDF file is displayed, or you are entering characters, you cannot switch View Blind on/off by pressing and holding ⑧ for at least one second.

<Image Quality>

Setting Quality of Display

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Image quality**
▶**Select an item.**

Normal. . . . . Normal image quality
Vivid. . . . . . . Vivid image quality
Dynamic . . . Dynamic image quality in which motion is emphasized

<Color Theme Setting> MENU ⑧ ⑥

Setting Color Combination for Display

You can set the display color pattern of characters, backgrounds, and so on.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Color theme setting**
▶**Select a color theme.**

●While selecting a color theme, you can check the selected color theme on the display.

Information

●You cannot change the color for icons and images displayed in multiple colors, the DOCOMO pictograms, and the Internet web pages (sites) supporting i-mode.

<Menu Icon Setting> MENU ⑤ ⑦

Setting Display of Main Menu

You can change the icons and the background images of Main Menu.

1 MENU▶(⌨)(Menu set)▶**Select a pattern.**

●If you set "Simple menu", Main Menu switches to a menu focusing on only basic functions for easy operation. Some operating procedures or items which appear on the display in Simple Menu differ from the ones described in this manual.

2 **When you select "Customize" in step 1, select a menu icon or background image to be changed**
▶**Select a folder**▶**Select an image.**

Repeat step 2 and set menu icons and a background image.
●While selecting a menu icon or background image, press (⌨)(Play) to confirm the currently set image.
●To reset the menu icon and background image set to "Customize" to "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder, press (i⍺)(FUNC) and select "Reset" or "All reset", then select "YES".
●See page 201 when you select "Search by i-mode".

Information
●The image you can set for "Customize" is a JPEG or GIF image whose size is Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller and up to 300 Kbytes. Perform "Change size" or "Trim away" for other images.
●When the image you set "Customize" is deleted, "スタンダード (Standard)" in the "Pre-installed" folder returns.
●When Personal Data Lock is activated while "Customize" is set, the default image is displayed.
●When you set "Customize", the main menu icons do not switch even if you switch "Select language".

<Kisekae Tool>
Using Kisekae Tool

You can use Kisekae Tool to change the ring tone, Stand-by display, menu icons and others at a time.
●See page 200 for details on how to download Kisekae Tool files.
●See page 367 for the operation from Data Box.

■**Items that can be set with Kisekae Tool**
・Select ring tone
・Display setting
・Color theme setting
・Menu icon setting
・Font

・Ticker font size set.
・Ticker color set.
・Ticker scroll speed
・Positioning ring tone
・Tone

●Items that can be set differ depending on the Kisekae Tool file.
●The setting change of phone/videophone ring tones, mail ring tone, Stand-by display, and clock is applied only to the A Mode of 2in1. The other changes are applied to the all modes of 2in1.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Kisekae**
▶**Highlight a Kisekae Tool file and press** (□)(**Set all**)
▶**YES**

●"★" is added to the Kisekae Tool file collectively set at the moment.
●Depending on the selected Kisekae Tool file, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to change the font size. When you select "NO", you might not be able to set the Kisekae Tool file correctly.

Information
●For the functions set by Kisekae Tool, each setting display is shown with "Follow Kisekae Tool" highlighted. You can separately change each setting, however, if you want to reset to the setting by Kisekae Tool, you need to perform collective settings again. You cannot select "Follow Kisekae Tool".
●If you use Kisekae Tool to change the design of the Menu display, some menu configurations change according to the usage frequency depending on the type of the menu. Further, some menu numbers that are assigned to the menu items do not apply.

Function Menu of Main Menu

Change launcher	You can manually replace the items on Main Menu. ▶**Select a destination to save to**▶**YES**
Disp. default MENU	You can temporarily show Main Menu of "Normal". ●Once you close Main Menu of "Normal", the currently set Main Menu returns.
Reset	See page 116.

Reset Changed Design

You can reset the items changed by Kisekae Tool.

1 MENU▶(**ⅰα**)(**FUNC**)▶**Reset**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**Select an item.**

Reset disp. /sound . . . . Resets all of "■Items that can be set with Kisekae Tool" to the default.
Reset menu screen. . . . Resets Main Menu to the default. You can reset also by pressing and holding CLR for at least one second from the Stand-by display and selecting "YES".
Reset menu log . . . . . . Resets the operation records of Main Menu to the default.

2 YES

Information
- Even if you perform "Reset disp. /sound" or "Reset menu screen", you cannot reset "Font size".
- Even if you execute "Reset menu screen", the Main Menu items you have manually replaced by "Change launcher" are not reset.

<Set to Machi-chara>
Setting Machi-chara Image

When Machi-chara is set, a Machi-chara image appears on the Stand-by display to tell you missed calls, new mail messages, new i-concier information and others.
- See page 200 for downloading Machi-chara images.
- See page 363 for the operations from Data Box.

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Display▶Machi-chara ▶Set to Machi-chara

- To release Machi-chara, select "Release Machi-chara".

2 Highlight a Machi-chara image and press ✉(Set).

- "★" is added to the currently set Machi-chara image.

Information
- The Machi-chara image is not displayed in the following cases:
  · During Lock All   · During Personal Data Lock   · During Omakase Lock
  · While an icon or another is selected on the Stand-by display
- Some Machi-chara images change their appearance according to the elapsed time, total calls duration, and number of mail messages sent/received after setting. If you move these Machi-chara images to the microSD card or execute "Reset all info", they return to the default state.

<Illumination>
Setting Color of Call/Charging Indicator and Others

1 MENU▶Set./Service▶Illumination ▶Do the following operations.

All illum. setting	You can set all illumination items at one time. ▶Select a pattern.
Incoming illumination	See page 118.
Illumination in talk	You can set the illumination for during a call. ▶Select an item. ● While selecting an item, you can check the flickering of the Call/Charging indicator. ● It flickers in the same color while Record Message is working, during answer-hold (On Hold), or while a call is on hold (Holding).
Missed/unread illum.	The Call/Charging indicator flickers at about 5-second interval for about 3 hours for missed calls, new mail messages, new chat mail messages, new Messages R/F, i-αppli calls you did not reply to, or new i-concier information. ▶ON or OFF ● It does not flicker in Public Mode (Drive Mode), during Lock All, and during Omakase Lock. Flickering does not resume even after Public Mode (Drive Mode) or each lock is released.
Music&Video Ch illum.	The Call/Charging indicator flickers at about 5-second interval for about 30 minutes when obtaining Music&Video Channel programs is completed. ▶ON or OFF
Slide illumination	You can set the illumination for when you open (Slide open) and close (Slide close) the FOMA terminal. ▶Slide open or Slide close▶Select an item. ● While selecting an item, you can check the flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.

Hourly illumination	You can be notified of the specified time (every hour at 0 minutes) by the tone and light of the Call/Charging indicator. ▶**Select a pattern.** **OFF**. . . . . . . The Call/Charging indicator does not light. **Pattern 1**. . . A fixed tone sounds and the Call/Charging indicator lights in the fixed color. **Pattern 2**. . . The tone and light of the Call/Charging indicator change by time. ●While selecting a pattern, you can check the lighting of the Call/Charging indicator and the time tone. ●"Hourly illumination" does not work while a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, or Lock All or Omakase Lock is activated. ●Time tone sounds at the volume set for "Phone" of "Ring volume". It sounds at Level 2 when "Step" is set.
MUSIC illumination	The Call/Charging indicator flickers when you start playback by MUSIC Player. ▶**ON or OFF**
Bluetooth illumination	The Call/Charging indicator flickers during connecting to Bluetooth devices. ▶**ON or OFF** ●It flickers at about 5-second interval for about 5 minutes when the connection is completed.
IC card illumination	The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you place the FOMA terminal over an IC card scanning device or during iC communication. ▶**ON or OFF** ●It does not light/flicker during IC Card Lock.
PushTalk illumination	The Call/Charging indicator lights/flickers when you try to get the PushTalk talker's right, or when a member's state changes to "Connected". ▶**ON or OFF**
Speed selector illum.	You can set the illumination for when you rotate the speed selector. ▶**Select an item.** ●While selecting an item, you can check the flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.
Check settings	You can check the setting contents for "Incoming illumination", "Illumination in talk", "Slide illumination", "Hourly illumination" and "Speed selector illum.".

118

Incoming Illumination   MENU⑧⑨

You can set an illumination for each incoming type.

1 **MENU**▶**Set./Service**▶**Illumination**▶**Incoming illumination**
▶**Do the following operations.**

Select color	▶**Select an incoming type**▶**Select an item.** ●To make the indicator light in colors "Color 1" to "Color 12" in order, select "Gradation". ●While selecting an item, you can check the lighting/flickering of the Call/Charging indicator.
Set pattern	You can set the lighting pattern of the Incoming Illumination. ▶**Select a pattern.** **Standard** . . . . Lights in the same pattern repeatedly. **Melody linkage**. . . . Lights with the ring tone.
Color setting	
Edit color name	▶**Select a color**▶**Enter a name.** ●You can edit "Color 1" through "Color 12" only. ●You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
Adjust color tone	▶**Select a color**▶**Adjust the color tone.** ●You can adjust the color tone of "Color 1" through "Color 12" only. ●Use ◎ to select a color and use ◎ to change the color tone.

Information

<Select color>
●The priority order of incoming illumination is; "Setting for Phonebook entry" → "Group setting" → "Select color".

<Set pattern>
●The Call/Charging indicator lights in specified pattern for each illumination when "Select color" is set to other than "Color 1" through "Color 12" and "Gradation".
●The Call/Charging indicator lights by "Standard" when an i-motion movie or melody with no flickering pattern is set for the ring tone.

<Font>

Changing Character Font

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Font**
▶**Font 1, Font 2, or Font 3**

Information

≥Some characters are displayed in "Font 1" regardless of the setting of this function.
≥You cannot change the font of a phone number entry or clock display.

Set Character Font and Color of Phone Numbers

You can set the font and color of names stored in the Phonebook and phone numbers displayed on the following displays:

■**Font of dial number**
· Dialing/Call Receiving display　　· Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Detailed Redial display
· Detailed Sent Chaku-moji message

■**Font color**
· Dialing/Call Receiving/Talking display　　· Dialed Calls/Received Calls/Redial
· Detailed Sent Chaku-moji message　　· Sent/Received Address list

≥When you use 2in1, the setting here applies to Number A. To specify for Number B, operate "Disp. call/receive No." of "2in1 setting".

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Incoming call**▶**Disp. call/receive No.**
▶**Do the following operations.**

Font of dial number	▶**Select a pattern.**
Font color	▶**Select a color.** ≥You can switch between 16 color and 256 color by pressing C (Change). ≥You can reset the set color by pressing i冤 (Reset).

Information

≥If you change the background color by "Color theme setting" or "Kisekae Tool", the font color automatically changes as well.
≥You cannot change the color of pictograms.

<Font Size>

Changing Font Size

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Font size**
▶**Do the following operations.**

Set at one time	You can set all the changeable items such as font size at a time. ▶**Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small** ≥The confirmation display might appear asking whether to change the font size of the menu as well. When you select "YES", the menu icons are changed to "Pearl White (Enlarge)" while "Extra large" or "Large" is set, and they are changed to "Normal" while "Standard" or "Small" is set. ≥When "Extra large" is set, "Phonebook" and "Dialed/recv. calls" are set to "Large". ≥When "Small" is set, "Phonebook" and "Dialed/recv. calls" are set to "Standard".
Mail	You can set the font size for the detailed mail display, detailed Message R/F display and for "Mail settings". ▶**Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small** ≥While the detailed mail display is shown, press i冤(FUNC) to select "Display" and then select "Font size". You can change the font size also by pressing 3, or pressing and holding O for at least one second. However, another mail message is displayed when you press and hold O for at least one second while "Extra large" is set, or you press and hold O for at least one second while "Small" is set. ≥You cannot change the font size of the Decome-Anime text or Deco-mail pictograms.
i-mode	You can set the font size for sites, "i-mode settings" and "Full Browser settings". ▶**Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small**
Phonebook	You can set the font size for the Phonebook and "Phonebook settings". ▶**Large or Standard** ≥You can set also by MENU ▶Phonebook▶Phonebook settings ▶Font size▶Phonebook.

Dialed/recv. calls	You can set the font size for the Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address and Received Address. ▶**Large or Standard** ●You can set also by m▶Phonebook▶Phonebook settings ▶Font size▶Dialed/recv. calls.
Character input	You can set the font size for the character entry display, Message Composition display, or SMS Composition display. ▶**Extra large, Large, Standard, or Small**

Information
●Depending on the function, characters might not be displayed in the set size.
●When "Extra large" or "Large" is set, some items displayed for each operating procedure differ from the ones displayed for when "Standard" or "Small" is set.

m56

Setting Clock Display

Set Stand-by Clock Display

You can set whether to display the clock on the Stand-by display and can set its display pattern.

1 m▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Display setting**▶**Clock**
▶**Stand-by clock**▶**Do the following operations.**

●During operation or by pressing c(■Play■) while "Stand-by clock" is highlighted, you can check the clock actually displayed. However, it might differ from the actual one depending on the setting of each function.

c(Position) **Position**	You can set the clock position. ▶**Select a pattern.**
i(Pattern) **Pattern**	You can set the display pattern of the clock. ▶**Select a pattern.**
m(■Size■) **Display size**	▶**Largest, Large, or Small** ●You cannot change the clock size of World Time Watch and the sub clock.

c(■曜日■) **Day of week**	When "Select language" is set to "日本語 (Japanese)", you can select "日本語 (Japanese)" or "英語 (English)". ●If you set to "英語 (English)", the region names of World Time Watch are displayed in English as well.

2 Press o(■Set■).

●The setting of this function might not be reflected depending on the settings of other functions or the condition of the FOMA terminal.

Set Icon Clock Display

You can set a display pattern of Icon Clock at the upper right of the display (lower right of the horizontal display).

1 m▶**Set./Service**▶**Display**▶**Display setting**▶**Clock**
▶**Icon clock**▶**Select a pattern.**

Security Settings

Security Codes Used for FOMA Terminal

For some functions of the FOMA terminal, you need to enter your security code. In addition to the Terminal Security Code for operating respective mobile phone functions, the Network Security Code to use network services, and i-mode password are available. These security codes help you utilize your FOMA terminal.

■**Cautions on security codes**
●You should avoid using the numbers for security codes such as denoting your birth date, part of your phone number, local address number, room number, "1111" or "1234" that is easily decoded by a third party. Also make sure that you take a note of the security codes you have selected just in case you forget them.
●Take care not to let others know your security codes. Even if your security codes are known and used by a third party, we at DOCOMO take no responsibility in any event for the resultant loss.
●If you do not remember your respective security codes, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license, the FOMA terminal and UIM to the handling counter of a docomo shop.
For details contact "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

Terminal Security Code

The Terminal Security Code is set to "0000" at purchase but you can change it by yourself. (See page 123)
When the display for entering the Terminal Security Code appears, enter your four- to eight-digit code and press ◉(Set).
●When you enter your Terminal Security Code, the entered numbers are indicated by "_" and not displayed.
●If you have entered wrong numbers or nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed; then the display prior to entering the Terminal Security Code returns. Check the correct code and retry entering numbers.

> Reset settings
>
> Security code?

Network Security Code

This is a four-digit number required for your identification to give orders at a docomo shop, docomo Information Center, or "各種お申込・お手続き (Respective applications/ procedures)" site, or when you use respective network services. This is determined at the time of contract but can be changed by yourself.
If you have "docomo ID/Password" for "My docomo", the overall support site for personal computers, you can use a personal computer to take proceedings of changing your Network Security Code to new one.
Further, you can change it by yourself from "各種お申込・お手続き (Respective applications/procedures)" of "お客様サポート (User support)" from i-mode.
※**For "My docomo" and "各種お申込・お手続き (Respective applications/ procedures)", see the inside of the back page of this manual.**

i-mode Password

You need to enter the four-digit "i-mode password" for registering or deleting My Menu, applying for or canceling Message Services, i-mode pay service, and so on. (Some information providers may provide you with their specific password.)
The i-mode password is "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change it by yourself. (See page 195)
From i-mode, you can change the i-mode password by following operation:
" 吕 Menu" → "English" → "Options" → "Change i-mode Password"

PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

For the UIM, you can set two security codes, namely the PIN1 code and PIN2 code. These security codes are "0000" at the time of your contract, but you can change them by yourself. (See page 124)
The PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit number for checking the user each time the UIM is inserted into the FOMA terminal or each time the FOMA terminal is turned on, so that you can prevent the third party from using your UIM. By entering your PIN1 code, you can make or answer calls, or use functions in the FOMA terminal.
The PIN2 code is a four- to eight-digit number for executing Reset Total Cost, using the user certificate or applying for the issue of it, etc.

●If you purchase a new FOMA terminal and use the existing UIM with the new FOMA terminal, use the PIN1 code and PIN2 code you have set previously.

When the PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code Entry display appears, enter your four- to eight-digit PIN1 code/PIN2 code and press ◉ (Set).

●The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as "_".
●If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession, it is locked and the FOMA terminal cannot be used. (The remaining number of times you can enter appears on the display.)
When you enter the correct PIN1 code/PIN2 code, the remaining number of times you can enter will return to three times.
●You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PIN1/PIN2 Code Entry display.

Enter PIN1 code

Enter PIN1 code

3 times left

For PIN1 code

PUK (PIN Unblock Code)

The PUK (PIN unblock code) is the eight-digit number for releasing the PIN1 code and PIN2 code lock state. You cannot change this code by yourself.

●If you enter a wrong PUK (PIN unblock code) 10 times in succession, the UIM is locked.

Security when the power turns on	Operation of user certificate Connecting to FirstPass sites
Enter PIN1 code	Enter PIN2 code

Wrong entry 3 times in succession

Enter PUK (PIN unblock code)	
Entry OK	Wrong entry 10 times in succession
Set new PIN code	Consult the handling counter of a docomo shop

Changing Terminal Security Code

Change the default for the Terminal Security Code required for operating functions to your own four- to eight-digit code so that you can make full use of the FOMA terminal. Make sure you take a note of the security code you have changed just in case you forget it.

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**
▶**Change security code**
▶**Enter the current Terminal Security Code.**

●If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".

2 **Enter a new Terminal Security Code (four to eight digits)**
▶**YES**

<UIM Setting>
Setting PIN Code

PIN1 Code Entry Set

You can set the FOMA terminal not to work unless you enter your PIN1 code when turning on the power.

1 MENU ▶**Set./Service**▶ **Lock/Security**▶**UIM setting**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**PIN1 code entry set**▶**ON or OFF**
▶**Enter the PIN1 code.**

●See page 122 for the PIN1 code.

123

Change PIN1 Code/Change PIN2 Code

You need to have set "PIN1 code entry set" to "ON" to change the PIN1 code.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**UIM setting**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**Change PIN1 code or Change PIN2 code**
▶**Enter the current PIN1 code/PIN2 code.**

≥See page 122 for the PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

2 **Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).**

≥The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as "_".

3 **Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.**

Releasing PIN Lock

If you enter a wrong PIN1 code/PIN2 code three times in succession on the display requiring its entry, it is locked and the FOMA terminal cannot be used. In this case, release the PIN1 code/PIN2 code lock and set a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code.

1 **Enter the PUK (PIN unblock code) (eight digits).**

≥The entered unblock code is displayed as "_".
≥You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even from the PUK Entry display.

```
Enter PUK

PIN1 code blocked
  Enter PUK

10 times left
```

2 **Enter a new PIN1 code/PIN2 code (four to eight digits).**

≥The entered PIN1 code/PIN2 code is displayed as "_".

3 **Enter the new PIN1 code/PIN2 code again.**

<Lock All>

Restricting Others from Using

If you set Lock All, you can do no operations other than answering calls and turning on/off the power.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Lock all**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

" 🔓 " and "Lock all" appear and Lock All is set.
≥To release Lock All, enter your Terminal Security Code from the Stand-by display. Even if you turn off the power, Lock All will not be released.

Information

≥You cannot make calls during Lock All. However, you can make emergency calls at 110/119/118. Select "YES" from the confirmation display for dialing.
≥You can receive calls, but the callers' data such as their names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. Further, the default ring tone sounds.
≥GPS Location Provision is available even during Lock All.
≥If you fail to release Lock All five times in succession, the power to the FOMA terminal turns off. However, you can turn it on again.
≥You can receive mail messages or Messages R/F during Lock All; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display for incoming mail messages and Messages R/F does not appear. The icons such as " 📧 ", " ℝ ", or " 🅵 " appear after Lock All is released.
≥During Lock All, the notification icons, desktop icons, and schedule events are not displayed on the desktop except " 🌙 ", " 🌙 ", and " 🌙 ". When Lock All is released, they are displayed.
≥The tickers of i-Channel are not displayed during Lock All.
≥The default Wake-up display appears during Lock All even when an i-motion movie has been set for the Wake-up display.
≥Even if you set Lock All, IC Card Lock is not activated.

<Omakase Lock>
Using Omakase Lock

When you have lost your FOMA terminal or in other cases, you can lock your personal data (such as Phonebook entries) and the IC Card function of Osaifu-Keitai by contacting DOCOMO. Omakase Lock protects your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai. Also, if Omakase Lock cannot be set at subscription but the communication to your FOMA terminal becomes available within one year, the lock will be automatically set. However, if you cancel the contract, halt getting the service, change your phone number, or change your contract to mova, the lock will not be automatically set even within one year.
To release the lock, contact DOCOMO by phone, etc.

※Omakase Lock is a pay service. However, you are not charged if you apply for this service at the same time as applying for the suspension of the line or during suspension, or if you are a member of DOCOMO Premier Club. Further, if you have signed up for Keitai Anshin Pack (Mobile Phone Security Package), you can use Omakase Lock within the flat-rate fee of Keitai Anshin Pack (Mobile Phone Security Package).

※Even during Omakase Lock, your FOMA terminal corresponds to the location provision request of GPS function if "Location request set." is set for permission.

■**Setting/Releasing Omakase Lock**
0120-524-360   Business hours: 24 hours
※You can set/release also from My docomo site via a personal computer or other devices.

●For details on Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

If Omakase Lock starts

"Omakase lock" is displayed on the Stand-by display and Omakase Lock is set.

●During Omakase Lock, all the key operations are locked and respective functions (including IC card functions) are disabled, except for answering voice calls/videophone calls, putting them on answer-hold (On Hold), turning on/off the power, adjusting the earpiece volume and adjusting the ring volume.
●You can receive voice calls and videophone calls (except PushTalk calls), but the callers' data such as names and images stored in the Phonebook are not displayed except for their phone numbers. In addition, the ring image and ring tone are reset to the default. When you release Omakase Lock, the former settings return.
●Mail messages received during Omakase Lock are held at the i-mode Center.
●You can turn on/off the power, however, Omakase Lock is not released by turning off the power.
●GPS Location Provision is available even during Omakase Lock.
●Note that neither the UIM nor the microSD card is locked.

Information

●Even while another function is working, Omakase Lock applies after finishing that function.
●Omakase Lock can be set even when another lock function is set. However, if you have set Public Mode (Drive Mode) before setting Omakase Lock, you cannot receive voice calls and videophone calls.
●Omakase Lock cannot be set when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, turned off, or during Self Mode. Besides Omakase Lock might not be set depending on your use, etc.
●When you have signed up for Dual Network Service and are using the mova phone, Omakase Lock cannot be set.
●Even when the contractor and the user of the FOMA terminal differ, the FOMA terminal will be locked if the contractor offers to DOCOMO.
●You can release Omakase Lock only when the UIM of the same phone number at locking is inserted in your FOMA terminal. If you cannot release it, contact "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual.

<Self Mode>
Using Self Mode

You can disable all phone calls and communication functions. During Self Mode, the caller hears the guidance to the effect that radio waves do not reach or the power is turned off. If you use DOCOMO Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use these services in the same way as when the FOMA terminal is turned off.

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Self mode**▶**YES**
   ▶**OK**

" self " appears and Self Mode is set.
●To release Self Mode, perform the same operation.

Information

●You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even during Self Mode. In this case, Self Mode is released.
●You cannot receive mail messages, Area Mail messages, or Messages R/F during Self Mode.
●Even if a call comes in during Self Mode, the icons notifying you of "Missed call" or presence of Voice Mail messages do not appear after releasing Self Mode.

<Personal Data Lock>
Hiding Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events

Including the functions which use personal information, you can set the following functions not to be used.

· Desktop
· Record message
· Play/Erase msg.
· Select image
· Remote monitoring
· PushTalk phonebook
· Add to phonebook
· Group setting
· Search phonebook
· No. of phonebook
· Phonebook settings
· Voice dial
· Voice announce
· Kisekae Tool
· Machi-chara
· Feel＊Mail image playback
· Restrictions
· Reject unknown
· Reset settings
· Initialize
· Mail

· Mail group
· Chat group
· i-mode
· Bookmark
· i-Channel
· i-concier
· Full browser
· PC movie
· Camera
· Bar code reader
· 1Seg
· Music&Video Channel
· MUSIC
· MUSIC player
· i-αppli
· i-Widget
· IC card content
· ToruCa
· GPS function
· Still image
· Movie

· Video
· Chara-den
· Melody
· microSD card
· Infrared communication
· iC communication
· Voice recorder
· PDF viewer
· Document viewer
· Alarm
· Schedule
· ToDo
· Alarm setting
· Own number
· Voice memo
· Movie memo
· Text memo
· UIM operation
· "Number setting" and "Set as ring tone" for Multi number
· Data transfer

1 **MENU▶Set./Service▶Lock/Security▶Personal data lock ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

" 🔒 " appears and Personal Data Lock is set.

- ●To release Personal Data Lock, perform the same operation. When Timer Lock ON At Close is set, the display for releasing Personal Data Lock appears also by opening the FOMA terminal.
  When you set "PIM/IC security mode" to "Face reader", follow the operation of "Use Face Reader to Release Lock" on page 130.
  When you set to "Double security", enter your Terminal Security Code after the operation on the page 130.

To temporally release Personal Data Lock

When you select a function which cannot be used during Personal Data Lock, the display for entering your Terminal Security Code appears depending on the function. When you enter your Terminal Security Code, " 🔒 " is cleared and you can temporarily use the function.

- ●When you show the Stand-by display while no menu function is activated, Personal Data Lock is set again.

Information

- ●You can automatically receive Messages R/F, i-mode mail messages, chat mail messages, and SMS messages during Personal Data Lock; however, the Receiving or Reception Result display does not appear. Further, the receiving operation such as ringing/vibration does not work, so you are not notified of receiving. The icons such as " 📩 ", " 📨 ", or " 📧 " appear after Personal Data Lock is released.
- ●During Personal Data Lock, some notification icons and desktop icons such as "New mail", "Missed alarm", "Phone number", "URL" and "Mail address" do not appear, however, they reappear when you release Personal Data Lock.
- ●During Personal Data Lock, the "Pre-installed" substitute image is sent to the other party if you send the substitute image during a videophone call.
- ●If you set "Lock all" during Personal Data Lock, " 🔒 " is cleared and " 🔒 " appears instead.
- ●You cannot set Personal Data Lock while "Reject unknown" is set.

<Lock Setting>
Setting a Variety of Locks

Timer Lock ON At Close

You can set "Timer lock ON at close" that automatically activates Key Lock, Personal Data Lock, or IC Card Lock when the specified time has elapsed after closing your FOMA terminal.

1 **MENU▶Set./Service▶Lock/Security▶Lock setting ▶Timer lock ON at close ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶Key lock, Personal data lock, or IC card lock ▶Select an elapse time.**

If you set to other than "OFF", " 🔒 " appears and then Timer Lock ON At Close is set. After Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock is activated, the Lock Release display appears when you open the FOMA terminal.

Information

- ●When the Stand-by display is not shown, or when another function is working with the Stand-by display shown, Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock is not activated even after the specified time elapses. However, when another function ends after closing the FOMA terminal, the lock is activated after the specified time elapses.
- ●When a call or mail message comes in after closing the FOMA terminal, or when you open it, the elapsed time counter returns to 0 seconds.
- ●When this function is activated, the lock is temporarily released if you release each lock. However, it is re-locked when the specified time elapses after closing the FOMA terminal.
- ●If Key Lock is set during Timer Lock ON At Close, " 🔒 " is cleared and " 🔒 " or " 🔒 " appears instead.

127

PIM/IC Security Mode

You can set the way to release Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Lock setting**
▶**PIM/IC security mode**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**Select a security mode.**

Security code . . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock. The setting is completed.
Face reader . . . . Use Face Reader authentication to release the lock.
Double security . . . . Enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock after using Face Reader authentication. The setting is completed.

2 **YES**

Information

●You cannot change PIM/IC Security Mode when the face data files stored by Face Reader Setting are fewer than three, or during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.

<Face Reader Setting>
Using Face Reader

You can store your face data files in Face Reader and use it for authentication when releasing IC Card Lock or Personal Data Lock. To use Face Reader, you need to store three or more face data files and set "PIM/IC security mode" to either "Face reader" or "Double security".

■**Notes on using Face Reader**

●The dirty camera might result in erroneous operation. Use this function after wiping it with a soft cloth to clean the dirt off.
●In environment where the face is exposed to strong light and the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face, the face will not be recognized easily. In this case, storing might become difficult or the recognition rate (the rate of correct identification) might be lowered. Adjust so that the face is exposed to even light.
●The face might not be recognized normally when its entire part is exposed to the light and becomes white.
●Storing the face might become difficult or the recognition rate might be lowered when the face conditions are as described below:
· When the features of the face (eyes, mouth, nose, and eyebrows, etc.) are hard to see as they are covered by hair, glasses, or a mask
· When the brightness significantly differs depending on the region of the face such as when you are under the light in a dark place
●The recognition rate might rise by reacting in accordance with the face conditions such as by raising the hair so that the eyes, nose, mouth, and eyebrows are clearly visible (taking the glasses and mask off) or moving to a place where the face is exposed to even light. The recognition rate rises also by storing the face data file additionally.
●The face authentication technology does not completely guarantee that you are recognized as yourself. Accordingly, we are not at all responsible for damages resulting from the use of this product by a third party or when the damages are caused by what you could not use the function because of wrong authentication by Face Reader.

Store

To use Face Reader, store 3 or more face data files. You can store up to 10 face data files.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**
▶**Lock/Security**
▶**Lock setting**
▶**Face reader setting**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**Store**
▶**OK**

Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. You can prevent the failure in authenticating the face data file, which results from the difference in the position of the face at storing and authenticating the data.

Guide frame

Recognition frame

Face the front
[0]key:Help w/ shooting

Stored number bar

Face Data Reading display

When your face is recognized, the recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off your eyes and mouth, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.
≥The number of face data files is displayed by the bar on the Face Data Reading display.

2 **Press ◉(Record).**

The face data file is shot.

3 **Press ◉(Store).**

The face data file you have shot is stored. Repeat step 2 through step 3 to store three or more face data files.
≥When the third face data file is stored, the message appears telling that Face Reader can be more easily used by adding face data file.
≥When you press CLR, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the face data file.
≥If you try to store the face data file in the same environment, you might not be able to store it. Change the direction of the face or the place for shooting.

Information
≥At shooting, the Call/Charging indicator flickers and the shutter tone sounds regardless of the Manner Mode setting. The sound volume for shutter tone cannot be changed.

Function Menu of the Face Data Reading Display

Brightness At Face reader start-up ±0	You can adjust to -3 (dark) through +3 (bright). ▶**Select a brightness level.** ≥You can adjust brightness also by pressing ③ from the Face Data Reading display.
Help	You can check the cautions for shooting. ≥You can show Help also by pressing ○ from the Face Data Reading display.

Delete Stored Images

You can reset all the face data files stored in Face Reader.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Lock setting**
▶**Face reader setting**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**Delete stored images**▶**YES**

Information
≥You cannot reset the face data files during Personal Data Lock or IC Card Lock.
≥When you reset the face data files, "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Security code".

Recognition-failed Image

The images not judged as yourself by Face Reader recognition operation are saved. You can use these images to specify who tried to illegally access your data.
The image is overwritten every time recognition-failed image is made.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Lock setting**
▶**Face reader setting**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**Recog. failed image**▶**Select an image.**

≥To delete the recognition-failed images, press |ｉα|(FUNC), select "Delete this", and then select "YES".

Face Reader Security

You can set Face Reader to additionally recognize blinking of the eyes.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Lock setting**
▶**Face reader setting**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**Face reader security**▶**Normal or High**

Normal . . . Does not recognize blinking of the eyes.
High. . . . . . Recognizes blinking of the eyes.

Change Security Code

You can set a security code to be entered instead of the Face Reader authentication for when "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Lock setting**
▶**Face reader setting**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**Change security code**
▶**Enter the current Face Reader Security Code.**

≥If you enter the code for the first time, enter "0000".

2 **Enter a new Face Reader Security Code (four to eight digits)**▶**YES**

Use Face Reader to Release Lock
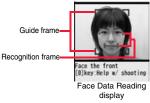
When "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader", use Face Reader to release the lock instead of using your Terminal Security Code.
When it is set to "Double security", use Face Reader for authentication and then enter your Terminal Security Code to release the lock.

1 **Display for releasing Personal Data Lock/IC Card Lock**
▶**Match the face to the guide frame and press**
(◉)(Start).

Face to the front, and locate the face within the guide frame. The recognition frame for the eyes and mouth is displayed, and the guide frame becomes green. When the recognition frame is not displayed or it comes off, place your face off the frame; then change the facing direction of your face to correctly display the recognition frame.

Guide frame
Recognition frame

Face Data Reading display

≥Perform the operation for authentication with the same facial expression as when you stored the face data file.
≥Press |□|(ScrtyCd) and enter your Face Reader Security Code; then you can operate to authenticate instead of using Face Reader.
For the Face Reader Security Code, see page 130.

If you failed to be authenticated

When additional storing of the face data file is possible, select "OK" to show the confirmation display asking whether to store additional face data file. Select "YES", enter your Terminal Security Code; then you can store additional face data file. When you cannot store any more face data files, select "OK" to show the Face Data Reading display. If the shot face is judged as another person, a shutter tone sounds and the recognition-failed image is saved. Select "OK" to show the Face Data Reading display. Try authentication using Face Reader again.

≥When 10 face data files are stored and a new data file is added, the oldest data file is overwritten.

When "Face reader security" is set to "High"

After you are successfully authenticated by Face Reader, your eye blinking is checked. Repeat blinking your eyes slowly.

When the detection of eye blinking fails, the authentication also fails.

≥Even in the same environment as that for the authentication by Face Reader, the detection of eye blinking may fail. Change the place or the direction of your face, and then operate.

<Keypad Dial Lock>
Locking Keypad Dial

You can lock dialing from the numeric keys. When using the FOMA terminal for business purposes, private use of the FOMA terminal can be prevented.

■**Unavailable operations**

· Dialing from the numeric keys
· Initial setting
· Phonebook (storing, editing, deleting, copying from the microSD card, backing up/restoring by the microSD card, sending/receiving using Infrared rays, sending/receiving using iC communication, and sending/receiving using Bluetooth communication)
· Phone To/AV Phone To function
· Mail To function

■**Available operations**

· Dialing from the Phonebook or Voice Dial
· Dialing from Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, or Received Address (Only phone numbers stored in the Phonebook)

1 [MENU]▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Keypad dial lock**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code.**

" 🔒 " is displayed and Keypad Dial Lock is set.
≥To release Keypad Dial Lock, perform the same operation.

Information

≥You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 using numeric keys even during Keypad Dial Lock.

Information

≥If you set Keypad Dial Lock, you can send mail only when the address is called up from the Phonebook and when the address stored in the Phonebook is called up from Sent Address or Received Address.

<Key Lock>
Restricting Key Operation

You can disable the keys except [⌒].

1 Press and hold (●) for at least one second.

" 🔒 " or " 🔒 " appears and Key Lock is set to "ON".
≥To set to "OFF", perform the same operation.

Information

≥You cannot turn off the FOMA terminal during Key Lock.
≥When you close the FOMA terminal during Key Lock, the FOMA terminal switches to Power Saver Mode regardless of the setting of "Backlight" on page 113. However, the FOMA terminal might not switch to Power Saver Mode depending on the function in use.
≥Even during Key Lock, you can answer an incoming call by pressing [⌒] and an incoming PushTalk call by pressing [⑤]. You can get the talker's right by pressing [⑤] during the PushTalk communication.
≥You can operate an earphone/microphone (option) and Bluetooth devices regardless of the setting of this function.
≥GPS Location Provision is available even during Key Lock.

131

Key Lock Setting

You can set whether to temporarily release Key Lock when you open the FOMA terminal.

1 [MENU]▶Set./Service▶Lock/Security▶Lock setting
▶Key lock setting▶Select an item.

Lock even slide open . . . . . . Even when you open the FOMA terminal, Key Lock is not temporarily released.
Unlock when slide open . . . When you open the FOMA terminal, Key Lock is temporarily released. During temporary release, " 📱 " is displayed.

Information
●If you close the FOMA terminal during temporary release, Key Lock is set again.

<Record Display Set>
Setting not to Display Redial/Received Calls

1 [MENU]▶Set./Service▶Incoming call▶Record display set
▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶Select an item.

Received calls . . . . Sets whether to display Received Calls and Received Address.
Redial/Dialed calls . . . . . Sets whether to display Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address.

2 ON or OFF
●When you set "Received calls" to "OFF", you cannot play back record messages of voice calls, either.

<Secret Mode> <Secret Data Only>
Protecting Phonebook Entries and Schedule Events from Prying Eyes

In ordinary mode, you cannot access/refer to Phonebook entries or schedule events stored as secret data. In Secret Mode, you can select whether to store the stored/edited Phonebook entries/schedule events as secret data or as ordinary data. The Phonebook entries/schedule events you have stored/edited in Secret Data Only are stored as secret data. You can access/refer to all the data files in Secret Mode but can access/refer to only the secret data files in Secret Data Only.

Activate Secret Mode   [MENU][4][0]
Activate Secret Data Only   [MENU][4][1]

1 [MENU]▶Set./Service▶Lock/Security
▶Secret mode or Secret data only
▶Enter your Terminal Security Code.

When "Secret mode" is selected, " S " appears and Secret Mode is activated. When "Secret data only" is selected, " S " blinks, the number of stored secret data items is displayed, and then Secret Data Only is activated.
●If you call up a Phonebook entry or schedule event in Secret Mode, " S " stays lit for ordinary data and " S " blinks for secret data.
●To deactivate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, perform the same operation or press [🔚] from the Stand-by display.

To change secret data to an ordinary Phonebook entry or schedule event

In Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, select "Release secret" from the Function menu of the Phonebook entry or schedule event to be released.

Information
●Only the Phonebook entries in the FOMA terminal can be stored as secret data.

Information

- ≥When you make a call to the party stored as secret data, his/her name is not displayed but the phone number is displayed on the Dialing/Talking display.
- ≥If you call up a secret entry to make a call or send mail, the record is not stored in "Redial", "Dialed calls" or "Sent address".
- ≥If you simultaneously activate "Lock all" and "Secret mode" or "Secret data only", deactivating "Lock all" deactivates "Secret mode" or "Secret data only".

<Secret Mail Display>
Applying Secret for Mail in Mailbox

You can set whether to display the mail (secret mail) message from the sender or to the destination address that matches secret data in the Phonebook.

1 ⬚▶**Mail settings**▶**Secret mail display**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**ON or OFF**

Information

- ≥Even when "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", you can check secret mail in Secret Mode or in Secret Data Only.
- ≥When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret address is included in addresses of simultaneous mail, that mail message is not displayed.
- ≥When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", and any secret member is included in chat members, chat mail messages of all chat members are not displayed.
- ≥When "Secret mail display" is set to "OFF", Area Mail messages are not displayed in Secret Data Only.

<Mail Security>
Setting not to Display Mail in Mailbox without Permission

You can set the security function for the Inbox, Outbox and Draft of the Mail menu.
You need to enter your Terminal Security Code to display the mail messages in security-activated boxes.

1 ⬚▶**Mail settings**▶**Mail security**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**
▶**Put a check mark for boxes to be set**▶⬚(**Finish**)

- ≥When security is set, " 🔒 " is added to the icon of the set box in the Mail menu.

Information

- ≥If you set security for the Outbox and Inbox, mail addresses are not stored in Sent Address and Received Address.

<Restrictions>
Setting Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

Restrict Dialing
You can disable making voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls to phone numbers other than specified ones. When you use the FOMA terminal for business use, this function is useful for preventing the private use. Call up the specified Phonebook entry and press ⬚ or ⬚(**Dial**) to make a voice call. (Press ⬚(**V.phone**) to make a videophone call, press ⬚ and to make a PushTalk call.) You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

Call Rejection
You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you do not want to receive to be rejected. The caller hears a busy tone. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.
This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

Call Acceptance

You can receive voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls only from specified phone numbers. You can set only the calls you want to accept to be connected. You can specify up to 20 phone numbers.

This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" simultaneously.

Restrict Dialing/Call Rejection/Call Acceptance

1 Detailed Phonebook display▶[≡α](FUNC)
▶Restrictions
▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶Select an item.

Restrict dialing . . . You can dial the specified phone numbers only.
Call rejection . . . . . You can reject calls from the specified phone numbers.
Call acceptance . . . You can accept calls from the specified phone numbers only.
Call forwarding . . . See page 445.
Voice mail . . . . See page 442.
The set item is indicated by "★".

≥When a Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, press ⊙ on the detailed display to highlight the phone number you will set Restrictions for.
≥To set Restrict Dialing for multiple phone numbers, first set Restrict Dialing and press [CLR] to return to the detailed Phonebook display; ⊙ to highlight the phone number to be set for Restrict Dialing and continue the operation.
If you press [⌒] to return to the Stand-by display, additional settings cannot be done. To do additional settings, release Restrict Dialing for the set phone number and activate Restrict Dialing again, including the released phone number.
≥To release Restrictions, perform the same operation.

Information

≥You cannot set this function for Phonebook entries stored as secret data, and in the UIM Phonebook.
≥If you activate "Personal data lock" while "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance" is set, you can accept all incoming calls.
≥You cannot operate the following while "Restrict dialing" is set:
· Calling up/Referring to phone numbers other than specified
· Keypad dial (except for the calls to the specified phone numbers)
· Dialing from Received Calls (except for the calls from the specified phone numbers)
· Storing/Editing/Deleting Phonebook entries, copying Phonebook entries from the microSD card, backing up/restoring by the microSD card, and copying Phonebook entries to the UIM

Information

≥You can make emergency calls at 110/119/118 even if you set "Restrict dialing".
≥When a call comes in from the phone number set with "Call rejection", or from other than the phone number set with "Call acceptance", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
≥You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail messages regardless of the setting of "Call rejection" or "Call acceptance".

Check/Release Restrictions on Phonebook Entries

1 [MENU]▶Phonebook▶Restrictions
▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶Select an item.

≥The set item is indicated by "★".
≥To release all the Phonebook entries set with Restrictions, press [≡α](FUNC), select "Release", and then select "YES".

2 Select a Phonebook entry.

The phone number set with Restrictions is displayed.
≥To release "Restrictions" per phone number, select the phone number you want to release by following the same steps above, and select "YES".

Setting Response to Incoming Calls without Caller ID

You can set whether to receive (accept) or not to receive (reject) a voice call, videophone call, and PushTalk call depending on the reason for no caller ID. There are three reasons; "Unavailable", "PublicPhone", and "User unset".

1 MENU ▶ Set./Service ▶ Lock/Security ▶ Call setting w/o ID ▶ Enter your Terminal Security Code ▶ Select an item.

Unavailable . . . . . Calls from the other party who cannot notify his/her phone number such as calls from overseas or from land-line phones via call forwarding services.
(However, the caller ID might be notified depending on the telephone companies the calls go through.)

PublicPhone . . . . Calls from public phones, etc.

User unset . . . . . When the caller has set the caller ID not to be notified.

2 Accept or Reject

- If you select "Accept", go to step 2 on page 104 to select a ring tone.
If you select "Same as ring tone", the ring tone will be the one selected in "Phone" of "Select ring tone".

Information

- If you select "Reject", the ring tone does not sound even if a call comes in, the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
- You can receive SMS messages or i-mode mail messages regardless of this setting.

Delaying Start of Ringing Operation

1 MENU ▶ Set./Service ▶ Incoming call ▶ Ring time ▶ Do the following operations.

Ring start time	You can set the FOMA terminal not to start ringing operation immediately for when a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call comes in from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook. This function is effective as a countermeasure for blocking nuisance calls such as one ring phone scam (one-giri). ▶ **ON or OFF ▶ Enter a start time (seconds).** ● Enter from "01" through "99" in two digits.
Missed calls display	You can set whether to display the call disconnected within the time specified for "Ring start time" in Received Calls. ▶ **Display or Not display**

Information

- When a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the FOMA terminal starts ringing as soon as the call comes in even if "186"/"184" is added to the phone number. However, during Personal Data Lock, or for the call from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, ringing starts according to the setting for this function.
- If the ring start time is longer than the ring time for Record Message Setting, the ringing operations do not start, activating Record Message instead. To activate Record Message after starting the ringing operations, set the longer ring time for Record Message Setting than the ring start time. The same applies to the ring time for Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, and Auto Answer Setting.

Security Settings

135

<Reject Unknown>
Rejecting Incoming Calls from Phone Numbers which are not Stored in Phonebooks

You can reject voice calls, videophone calls, and PushTalk calls from the party whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook.
This function is valid only when the other party notifies his/her phone number. It is advisable to activate "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID" simultaneously.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Lock/Security**▶**Reject unknown**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**Accept or Reject**

Information

●If a call comes in from the party whose phone number is stored as secret data, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
●If you simultaneously activate "Reject unknown" and "Call acceptance" of "Restrictions", the latter has priority.
●When a call comes in from anyone whose phone number is not stored in the Phonebook while you set this function to "Reject", the call is stored in "Received calls" as a missed call record, and the "Missed call" icon appears on the Stand-by display. Also, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to "Activate". However, if you set the ring time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service to 0 seconds, when the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, or when the power is turned off, the busy tone will not be played back, activating Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.
●Even when this function is set to "Reject", the FOMA terminal follows the setting of "Call setting w/o ID" if each setting of "Call setting w/o ID" is set to "Accept".
●You can receive SMS and i-mode mail messages regardless of this setting.
●You cannot set "Reject unknown" during Personal Data Lock.
●You cannot set "Reject unknown" to "Reject" while "Ring start time" of "Ring time" is set to "ON".

<Data Security Service>
Using Data Security Service

This service enables you to save the Phonebook, images, mail messages, ToruCa files※, and schedule events※ (hereafter, "saved data files") in your FOMA terminal to the DOCOMO's Data Storage Center and to restore them when you unexpectedly lose your handset or change models. Further, you can notify the concerned parties of your mail address change at a time. You are not charged a packet communication fee for sending the multi-address notice mail. If you have a personal computer (My docomo), you can use this service more conveniently.
※You need to subscribe to i-concier to save the ToruCa files and schedule events to the Center. (As of December 2008)
●For details on Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
●Data Security Service is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for Data Security Service).

Save to Data Storage Center

1 **Display of the data file to be saved**▶ⓘα(⬛FUNC⬛)
▶**Move/copy**▶**Connect to Center or Store in Center**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

●You do not need to select "Move/copy" depending on the function.
●When you operate from the Inbox list, Outbox list, Draft list, or Still Image list, put a check mark for the data files to be saved and press ✉(Finish).
You can select up to 10 data files.

Information

●You cannot save the data files stored on the UIM or microSD card.
●You cannot save the files attached to mail.
●You cannot save the following images:
· Images whose sizes exceed 100 Kbytes
· Images whose output from the FOMA terminal is prohibited
· Images other than in JPEG or GIF format

Restoring to your FOMA terminal

Note that if you delete Phonebook entries from your FOMA terminal and save the Phonebook to the Data Storage Center, the Phonebook entries on the Data Storage Center are also deleted. When you restore the Phonebook from the Data Storage Center to your FOMA terminal, do the following operations.

1 (i⍺)▶ 吕 Menu▶English▶My Menu
▶電話帳お預かり **(Data Security Service)**
▶お預かりセンター **(Data Storage Center)**
▶**Enter your i-mode password.**

●When you have subscribed to i-concier, operate (i⍺)▶ 吕 Menu▶English
▶My Menu▶お預かり／ｉコンシェル (Data Storage/i-concier)
▶お預かりデータ確認 (Check saved data)▶Enter your i-mode password.

2 Select "ケータイへダウンロード **(Download to mobile phone)**" from the Phonebook on the Data Storage Center▶**OK**

●Download starts in about 15 seconds. Wait for a while with the Stand-by display shown.

Information

●When the Phonebook entries saved to the Data Storage Center exceeds the number of Phonebook entries storable in the FOMA terminal's Phonebook, the excess entries cannot be updated.
●When you delete the data of the second phone number or after, second mail address or after, and location information in a Phonebook entry, and phone numbers and group names (numbers) in the PushTalk Phonebook, the deletion is not reflected at the Data Storage Center. You can reflect the deletion of the second phone number or after and second mail address or after in a Phonebook entry, by deleting them at the Data Storage Center of the PC site (My docomo).
●The deletion of a whole Phonebook entry is reflected at the Data Storage Center.

Auto-update of the Phonebook

On the site of the Data Storage Center, you can set so as to periodically update and save the Phonebook entries in your FOMA terminal to the Data Storage Center.

Information

●The data files are not automatically updated while another function is working at the time of Auto-update.

Information

●If the data files cannot be updated, the notification icon of " ↻ " (Data Sec. Service UD) appears on the desktop. Select " ↻ " to show the update display.

Setting Data Security Service

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶Data Security Service
▶**Do the following operations.**

Connect to Center	See page 136.
Exchanging history	You can display the records of communication with the Data Storage Center. ▶**Select a record.** ●Select a communication completion time in the list to switch to the detailed display.
PB image sending	You can set whether to save images set for the Phonebook entries to the Data Storage Center. ▶**ON or OFF**

Information

<Exchanging history>
●Up to 30 records are saved. When more than 30 records are saved, the older records are overwritten.

<PB image sending>
●You cannot save the images whose output from FOMA terminal is prohibited.

Using Data Security Service with i-concier

自動お預かり／更新設定 **(Automatic saving/Update settings)**

You can configure settings for Data Security Service.

1 (MENU)▶**i-concier**▶(⊠)(MENU)▶設定 **(Settings)**
▶自動お預かり／更新設定 **(Automatic saving/Update settings)**▶**Follow the instructions on the display.**

137

お預かりデータ確認 (Check saved data)

You can check the data files at the Data Storage Center.

1 MENU▶**i-concier**▶⊡**(MENU)**▶設定 **(Settings)**
▶お預かりデータ確認 **(Check saved data)**
▶**Follow the instructions on the display.**

お預かりデータ更新 (Update stored data)

You can update the data files at the Data Storage Center and in the FOMA terminal.

1 MENU▶**i-concier**▶⊡**(MENU)**▶設定 **(Settings)**
▶お預かりデータ更新 **(Update stored data)**
▶**Put a check mark for data files to be updated**
▶⊡**(Finish)**

お預かり通信履歴 (Communication records of saving)

You can show the records of communication with the Data Storage Center.

1 MENU▶**i-concier**▶⊡**(MENU)**▶設定 **(Settings)**
▶お預かり通信履歴 **(Communication records of saving)**
▶**Select a record.**

●Select a communication completion time from the list to show the detailed display.

<Reset Settings>
Resetting Function Settings

MENU**23**

You can reset the items indicated by [ ] of "Function List" to their default. (See page 476)

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Other settings**▶**Reset settings**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

Information

●You cannot execute "Reset settings" while a Bluetooth device is connected or on standby for connection.

138

Information

●You cannot execute "Reset settings" during IC Card Lock while "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".
●After you execute "Reset settings", the i-Channel tickers are not displayed. Then, when the information is automatically updated or you press ⊙ to receive the latest information, the tickers automatically flow.

<Initialize>
Deleting Saved Data All at Once

You can delete the saved data and reset the setting contents of each function to the default.
See "Function List" for the setting at purchase. (See page 476)

●The pre-installed data files are not deleted.
●All the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli programs except "iD 設定アプリ (iD Setting Application)" are deleted. However, they might not be deleted depending on your usage state.
●The data files stored in the pre-installed i-αppli programs are deleted. However, the data files stored in Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli programs that have not been deleted are not deleted.
●The protected data files are also deleted.
●All the stored data files are deleted regardless of the mode of 2in1.
●Even if you have deleted the pre-installed data files, they are restored when you execute "Initialize". However, if you delete the pre-installed i-αppli programs, they are not restored.
●Charge the battery full before initializing the FOMA terminal. When the battery level is not enough, you may not be able to initialize the FOMA terminal.
●During initialization, never turn off the power of the FOMA terminal.
●You cannot use other functions during initialization. Also, you cannot receive calls or mail messages.

1 MENU▶**Set./Service**▶**Other settings**▶**Initialize**
▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**▶**YES**

When initializing ends, the power automatically turns off and then turns on and the "Initial setting" display appears.

Information

- ●You cannot execute "Initialize" while a Bluetooth device is connected or on standby for connection.
- ●You cannot execute "Initialize" during IC Card Lock while "PIM/IC security mode" is set to "Face reader" or "Double security".
- ●You cannot delete the data saved to, stored in, or set for the UIM or the microSD card.
- ●You cannot delete the setting of data communication set by a personal computer.
- ●To restore the i-αppli programs, download them from the "P-SQUARE" site. For downloading, you are charged an additional communication fee.
- ●After you execute "Initialize", the i-Channel tickers are not displayed. Then, when the information is automatically updated or you press ⓪ to receive the latest information, the tickers automatically flow.
- ●After you initialize the FOMA terminal, you cannot automatically obtain Music&Video Channel programs. Access the Setting Confirmation display from the Music&Video Channel menu to reflect the program setting.
- ●Initialization may take a while if the data to be deleted is bulky.

<Remote Reset>
Resetting Data by Remote Control

If you contract with the service of this function, you can initialize the data files (memory within the handset/microSD card/UIM) of the target FOMA terminal by the offer from you (administrator).

■**Inquiries**
docomo Business Online
From personal computers　http://www.docomo.biz (in Japanese only)
※You may not be able to access due to system maintenance, etc.

When Remote Reset launches

The display appears telling that operation is disabled and the initialization starts.

- ●When Remote Reset launches, all the key operations are locked and you cannot operate the functions except for answering voice calls and answer-hold (On Hold). When the initialization starts, you cannot use all the functions.
- ●When Remote Reset launches while the phone is ringing or during a call, all the key operations except for 📞 and 📴 are locked. When initialization starts, ringing or the call automatically finishes.

Information

- ●"Set time" is not initialized.
- ●The microSD card might not be initialized when the FOMA terminal is connected to a personal computer.

Other Security Settings

Besides introduced in this chapter, the following functions/services for the Security Settings are available:

Functions/Service name	If you want	Reference page
IC Card Lock	To protect the IC card function from being used illegally	316
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	To prevent crank calls or vicious sales calls from incoming	445
Caller ID Request	To prevent the incoming call that does not notify a caller ID	446
FirstPass	To ensure safe and reliable data communication by using electronic authentication services ※Limited to FirstPass sites	206
Software Update	To update software programs in the FOMA terminal when necessary	523
Scanning Function	To protect the FOMA terminal from data liable to cause trouble	529
Receive Option	To receive necessary mail only from among the large volume of incoming mail	156

Functions/Service name	If you want	Reference page
i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version"	
Change Mail Address		
Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL) (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) (Easy Mail Setting) (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders) (SMS Rejection Settings) (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail※) (Confirm Settings)		
Suspend/reactivate Mail		
Limit Mail Size		
Keitai-Osagashi Service		
イマドコかんたんサーチ (imadoco kantan search)		

Information

● The priority order of functions simultaneously set to prevent nuisance calls is as follows: "Nuisance Call Blocking Service" → "Call rejection" → "Reject unknown/Call setting w/o ID" → "Ring time".

Mail

i-mode Mail

Once you subscribe to i-mode, you can exchange e-mails over the Internet as well as among i-mode phones.

You can attach files (photos, movie files, etc.) within 2 Mbytes in total (up to 10 files) besides mail text. The i-mode mail also supports Deco-mail, so you can change the font color, font size, and background color of mail text. Further, you can use the Deco-mail pictograms, so you can easily send expressive messages.

●For details on i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

You can compose and send i-mode mail messages.

You can save up to 1,000 sent i-mode mail messages including SMS messages to the Outbox.

See page 146 for creating a Deco-mail message.

1 ⊠▶⊠(New)

Address field
Subject field
Attachment field
Text field
(When you enter text, the number of bytes is displayed.)

New mail

Message Composition display

2 Select the address field▶Select an item.

Phonebook . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address.

Sent address . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ●(Select).

Received address . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ●(Select).

Mail group . . . . Select a mail group.

Enter address . . . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number.

●You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
●If the destination is an i-mode phone, you can send mail also by entering only the part preceding the "@" mark of a mail address.
●See page 143 for sending to multiple destination addresses.
●See page 144 for deleting an added address.

3 Select the subject field▶Enter a subject.

●You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.

4 Select the attachment field▶Select an item.

●See page 153 for how to select an attachment.

5 Select the text field▶Enter text.

●You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters.
●See page 144 for pasting a header or signature.

Message
A presentation of a new mobile phone will be made at 10 a.m. tomorrow. See the map below.

Deco UNDO Prev.
abc ½　9911/10000byte
Mode　 Set 　FUNC
Pic　　　　　　Url

Message Entry display

6 Press ⊠(Send).

The animation display during transmission appears and the mail message is sent.
●To cancel sending midway, press ●(Cancel) or press and hold CLR (for at least one second). However, the mail message might be sent depending on the timing.

7 **OK**

- ≥Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be displayed correctly at the destination.
- ≥If you send an i-mode mail message with a pictogram entered to another carrier's mobile phone, the pictogram is automatically converted into a similar pictogram at the receiving end. Depending on the model or function of the receiving end's mobile phone, however, the pictogram might not be correctly displayed or be converted into a character or "=" when no corresponding pictogram is found.
- ≥When the sent mail messages stored in the FOMA terminal exceed the maximum number of storage, they are deleted from the oldest one. However, protected sent mail messages are not deleted.
- ≥You cannot compose an i-mode mail message when sent mail messages in the Outbox are saved to the maximum and all of them are protected, when 20 draft mail messages are saved, or when the Draft is full.
  Release the protection for sent mail messages, or send/delete draft mail messages, and then operate again.
- ≥When you select "Compose message" from the Function menu such as when entering a phone number, the mail address is entered as a destination address if the phone number and mail address are stored in a Phonebook entry. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the Phonebook entry, the first mail address is entered.
- ≥If you try to send the mail whose address is a phone number headed by "184"/"186", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete prefix numbers and send the mail.
- ≥When a destination phone number or mail address is stored in a Phonebook entry, the name stored in the Phonebook entry is displayed in the address field.
- ≥You cannot send mail to the addresses that include a comma (,).
- ≥You can enter an address in the To, Cc and Bcc fields.
- ≥If a Phonebook entry with a secret code is set as a destination address, the secret code will be automatically added at sending. Even if a secret code is set for the Phonebook entry, however, it will not be added and the i-mode mail message will be sent as ordinary one unless the destination address is a phone number or "phone number@docomo.ne.jp".
- ≥If you store the secret code and send mail to a mail address other than that of DOCOMO mobile phones, you might not receive the error message for unknown address.
- ≥The recipients might not be able to receive the full length of the subject depending on their phones.
- ≥You can send up to 2,000 full-pitch characters in text to the i-mode phone of the mova service.
- ≥Each line feed is counted as one full-pitch character, and a space is counted as one full-pitch or half-pitch character.

Information

- ≥The mail message you entered a Deco-mail pictogram becomes a Deco-mail message.
- ≥In B Mode of 2in1, you cannot compose i-mode mail.

Function Menu of the Message Composition Display

Send	You can send the mail message. Go to step 7 on page 143.
Preview	Check the address, subject, text and attachments before sending. ≥You can send the mail message by pressing ⊠(Send).
Save	When composing or editing the mail, you can save it to the Draft.
Operate receiver	
Add receiver	You can add multiple addresses in the address field to send the same i-mode mail to multiple recipients simultaneously. You can send the same mail to up to five addresses at the same time. ▶**Select an item.** **Phonebook** . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. **Sent address** . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ◉(Select). **Received address** . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ◉(Select). **Enter address** . . . . Enter a mail address or phone number. ≥To consecutively add addresses, select <Not entered> and repeat the above operations. ≥Press ⓘ(FUNC) and select "Delete receiver" to delete the selected mail address. Select "YES". ≥Press ⓘ(FUNC) and select "Change rcv. type" to change the type of mail. (See page 144) ≥Select an entered mail address on the Mail Composition display to show the Address list. ▶⊠(Finish)

Mail

Delete receiver	You can delete the selected address when there are multiple addresses. ▶**YES**	
Change rcv. type	▶**Select a receiving type.** **To** . . . . . This is the direct destination address. "To" recipients are displayed at the receiving ends.※ **Cc** . . . . . Specify to let parties know the mail contents in addition to the direct recipients. "Cc" recipients are displayed at the receiving ends.※ **Bcc** . . . . Specify to hide the recipients from others. "Bcc" recipients are not displayed at the receiving ends. ※They might not be displayed depending on the mobile phone, device, or mail software of the receiving end.	

Operate att. file

Activate camera	You can shoot and attach an image or i-motion movie. ▶**Select a shooting mode.** ●See page 233 and page 236 for how to shoot.
Attach file	See page 153.
Delete att. file	See page 155.

Template

Load template	You can read in a Deco-mail template and create a Deco-mail message. ●When the text has already been entered, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the text. ▶**Select a template.** The contents of the template are entered into the text. ●While selecting a template, press (⊠)(Play) to check the contents of the template. ●See page 146 for creating a Deco-mail message.

Save template	You can save the Deco-mail message you are creating as a template. ▶**YES** ●See page 201 when templates are stored to the maximum. ●See page 151 for how to check the stored template.
Add header/sig.	You can paste a header/signature at the beginning or ending of the text of the i-mode mail message. ▶**Add header or Add signature** ●You need to store the header/signature beforehand. (See page 176)

Information

<Operate receiver>
●You cannot add any addresses if the address field for "To", "Cc", and "Bcc" already contains five addresses in total or contains no addresses.
●You cannot send i-mode mail if the "To" field is blank.

<Save template>
●The subject of i-mode mail you are composing will be the title of the template. If no subject is entered, the title takes the name of "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm".
(Y: year, M: month, D: date, h: hour, m: minute)

<Add header/sig.>
●You cannot paste a header/signature if the text, including the header/signature, would exceed 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters.
●If the decoration such as font color or font size is set for the top or end of text, the header or signature will be decorated as well.

Function Menu of the Message Entry Display

Decorate mail	See page 147.	
Template		
	Load template	See page 144.
	Save template	See page 144.
Full pitch/Half pitch	See page 432.	

Copy	See page 436.
Cut	See page 436.
Paste	See page 436.
Undo	After entering or deleting characters, pasting data, or operating on a decoration, you can undo your most recent operation. You can do it up to twice. ● You can undo the operation also by pressing and holding 🕽 for at least one second.

Pictograms/symbols

	Pictograms	See page 433.
	Symbols	See page 433.
	Smiley	See page 433.
	Space	See page 433.

Phrase/quote

	Common phrases	See page 433.
	Kuten code	See page 433.
	Input time	See page 434.
	Quote phonebook	See page 434.
	Quote own data	See page 434.

Paste location

	By position loc.	You can obtain the location information by measuring the current location (see page 326), convert that information into the URL, and then paste it to the i-mode mail text. ▶●(　Set　)▶YES
	From loc. history	You can convert the location information from Location History (see page 335) into the URL, and paste it to the i-mode mail text. ▶Select a location record▶●(Select)▶YES
	From phonebook	You can convert the location information stored in the Phonebook into the URL, and paste it to the i-mode mail text. ▶Select a Phonebook entry▶●(Select)▶YES

	From own number	You can convert the location information stored in "Own number" into the URL, and paste it to the i-mode mail text. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶●(Select) ▶YES
Bar code reader		See page 244.

Character input

	Own dictionary	See page 436.
	Learned words	See page 437.
	Change input mode	See page 434.
	Predict	See page 432.
	Candidate display	See page 434.
	Character set time	See page 434.
	2/NIKO-touch guide	See page 434.

Help	See page 434.
JUMP	See page 434.
Preview	You can check the contents of the text before sending. ● You can preview also by pressing 🔳.

Information

<Undo>
● Once you use "Undo" to return to the previous status, you cannot cancel this by using "Undo" again.
● If you close the Message Entry display, you cannot return to the previous status by using "Undo" when you re-open it. (However, after you have exited "Preview", you can return to the previous status by "Undo".)
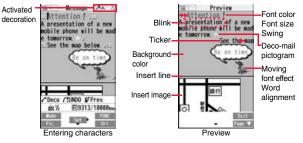
<Paste location>
● You can paste up to 512 half-pitch characters, and the pasted URL is counted as the number of characters in the mail text.
● " ▷ " is inserted before the pasted URL. However, you can delete it while editing.

Creating and Sending Deco-mail

When editing an i-mode mail message, you can change the size of the font and the color of the background as well as inserting images, thus composing your own original mail.
You can create Deco-mail also using the templates (patterns).
(See page 151)

Activated decoration

Entering characters

Blink
Ticker
Background color
Insert line
Insert image

Preview

Font color
Font size
Swing
Deco-mail pictogram
Moving font effect
Word alignment

1 Perform the operations in step 1 through step 4 on page 142.

2 Select the text field▶Decorate the text using Palette.

●See page 147 for how to use Palette.

To enter text after selecting decorations

📞▶**Select one of decorations▶Enter text.**

To set decorations after entering text

Enter text▶📞▶ 🖻 (Select area)

Go to "Select area" on page 148.

●You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters. (The number of characters you can enter decreases depending on the decoration.)
●Once you decorate the mail text, " " appears.
●You can preview the contents of the text by pressing 🖻.
Press (📧)(Exit) to finish previewing and return to the former display.

3 Press ●(Set).

The Message Composition display is displayed.
Go to step 6 on page 142.

Information
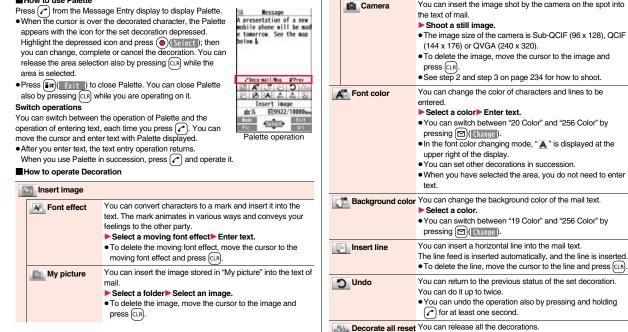
●Even if you delete the decorated characters, only the decoration data remain and the number of characters you can enter might decrease. Clear the decoration and then delete the characters. If you delete the characters by pressing and holding
CLR for at least one second, the characters as well as the decoration data are deleted.
●When you reply with quote to a received Deco-mail message or you forward it, the decorations and inserted images are entered in text as they are.
●If you use a template containing an image unable to attach to mail for sending, the image is deleted.
●When you send a Deco-mail message in excess of 10,000 bytes, the mail message with the URL for browsing is received at some destination i-mode phones. However, only the mail text without the URL for browsing might be received at some models.
●Decorations might not be correctly displayed if you send/receive Deco-mail messages to/from the devices such as personal computers.
●The movement of Ticker/Swing, blink and animation playback stop when a certain period has passed.

Decorations

You can decorate the text of i-mode mail using Palette.
You can set multiple decorations for one point.
●You cannot combine Word Alignment, Ticker, and Swing for one point.
●Lines are inserted by Line Insert with the color specified by Font Color.
●If Word Alignment, Ticker, or Swing is specified, the images and moving font effects are inserted with the specified state.
●You can enter Deco-mail pictograms using "Insert image", and by "Pictograms" on the Function menu as well.

Mail

■**How to use Palette**

Press �’ from the Message Entry display to display Palette.

- ≥When the cursor is over the decorated character, the Palette appears with the icon for the set decoration depressed. Highlight the depressed icon and press ⊙(｢ Select ｣); then you can change, complete or cancel the decoration. You can release the area selection also by pressing [CLR] while the area is selected.

- ≥Press ⫿ᴀ⫿(｢ Exit ｣) to close Palette. You can close Palette also by pressing [CLR] while you are operating on it.

Switch operations

You can switch between the operation of Palette and the operation of entering text, each time you press �’. You can move the cursor and enter text with Palette displayed.

- ≥After you enter text, the text entry operation returns. When you use Palette in succession, press �’ and operate it.

Palette operation

■**How to operate Decoration**

	Insert image	
A⁺	**Font effect**	You can convert characters to a mark and insert it into the text. The mark animates in various ways and conveys your feelings to the other party. ▶**Select a moving font effect**▶**Enter text.** ≥To delete the moving font effect, move the cursor to the moving font effect and press [CLR].
	My picture	You can insert the image stored in "My picture" into the text of mail. ▶**Select a folder**▶**Select an image.** ≥To delete the image, move the cursor to the image and press [CLR].

	Camera	You can insert the image shot by the camera on the spot into the text of mail. ▶**Shoot a still image.** ≥The image size of the camera is Sub-QCIF (96 x 128), QCIF (144 x 176) or QVGA (240 x 320). ≥To delete the image, move the cursor to the image and press [CLR]. ≥See step 2 and step 3 on page 234 for how to shoot.
A⁺	**Font color**	You can change the color of characters and lines to be entered. ▶**Select a color**▶**Enter text.** ≥You can switch between "20 Color" and "256 Color" by pressing ⊠(｢ Change ｣). ≥In the font color changing mode, " A " is displayed at the upper right of the display. ≥You can set other decorations in succession. ≥When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.
	Background color	You can change the background color of the mail text. ▶**Select a color.** ≥You can switch between "19 Color" and "256 Color" by pressing ⊠(｢ Change ｣).
	Insert line	You can insert a horizontal line into the mail text. The line feed is inserted automatically, and the line is inserted. ≥To delete the line, move the cursor to the line and press [CLR].
⟲	**Undo**	You can return to the previous status of the set decoration. You can do it up to twice. ≥You can undo the operation also by pressing and holding �’ for at least one second.
	Decorate all reset	You can release all the decorations. ▶**YES** ≥If you have inserted an image, the message "In-line image is deleted" is displayed.

	Select area	You can set Font Color, Blink, Font Size, Word Alignment, Ticker and Swing over the selected text you have entered. You can also change the set decoration, add another decoration, or cancel Blink, Ticker or Swing. ▶**Select a start point.** ●You can select all text by pressing 🔳(All) and selecting "YES". ▶**Select an end point.** Set, change, add or cancel each decoration. ●" 区域/SELECT " is displayed at the upper right of the display during selecting decoration area. **<Set, change, or add decoration>** ▶**Select an icon and set, change, or add decorations.** ●Select another icon in succession to change the multiple decorations or add decorations. ▶ ⬜ ●When Blink, Ticker, or Swing has been set, reselect each icon and complete decorations. **<Release Blink, Ticker, or Swing>** ▶**Select the icon for Blink, Ticker, or Swing** ▶**Select the same icon again.**
	Font size	You can change the size of characters to be entered. ▶**Select a font size**▶**Enter text.** ●In the font size changing mode, " " or " " is displayed at the upper right of the display. ●You can set other decorations in succession. ●When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.

	Select blink	You can make characters to be entered blink. ▶**Enter text.** The set characters are blinking. ●In the blink setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display. ●You can set other decorations in succession. ▶ ▶ (Reset blink)
	Select ticker	You can make characters to be entered and images to be inserted flow (moving from right to left). ▶**Enter text.** The line feed is inserted automatically and " " is displayed before and after the cursor. ●In the ticker setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display. ●You can set other decorations in succession. ▶ ▶ (Reset ticker) The line feed is inserted automatically.
	Select swing	You can make characters to be entered and images to be inserted swing (moving to left and right back). ▶**Enter text.** The line feed is inserted automatically and " " is displayed before and after the cursor. ●In the swing setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display. ●You can set other decorations in succession. ▶ ▶ (Reset swing) The line feed is inserted automatically.
	Word alignment	You can change the position of characters to be entered and images to be inserted. ▶**Select a word alignment**▶**Enter text.** The line feed is inserted automatically, and the alignment is set. ●In the word alignment setting mode, " " is displayed at the upper right of the display. ●You can set other decorations in succession. ●When you have selected the area, you do not need to enter text.

<Insert image>

- You can insert up to 20 types of images within 90 Kbytes in total. However, you can insert up to 2 types of Flash movies. Even if the inserted images are 20 types or fewer, the number of inserted images reaches maximum depending on the operation and the confirmation display for re-editing appears.
- If multiple same images are inserted, they are counted as a single type of file. If you copy/paste the image already inserted, that image is regarded as the same image and handled as a single type of file. However, if you insert the same Flash movie, it is handled as the second type of files.
- You can apply Blink, Ticker, Swing, and Word Alignment to the inserted images, however, you cannot apply them to Flash movies.

<Font color>

- If you move the cursor to the character for which another color is set, the setting changes to that color.
- The color for pictograms is also subjected to the specified font color. To restore the color to ordinary one, select "指定なし/Default".
- You cannot change the color of Deco-mail pictograms.

<Background color>

- You cannot change the background color when editing the header or signature.

<Font size>

- If you move the cursor to the character for which a different font size is set, the font size is changed to that size of the character.
- You cannot change the size of the Deco-mail pictogram.

<Select blink>
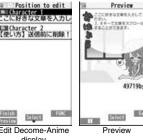
- You cannot make Deco-mail pictograms blink.

Creating and Sending Decome-Anime

Decome-Anime is a mail service which enables you to create expressive mail messages which have Flash movies with messages and images, using Decome-Anime templates.
You can create them using templates pre-installed or purchased on the IPs (Information Providers) site.

Edit Decome-Anime display

Preview

© SOCKETS

1 📧▶**Create new Decome-Anime**

Create Decome-Anime display

2 **Perform the operations in step 2 through step 4 on page 142.**

Mail

3 **Select the text field▶Phone or microSD**
▶Select a Decome-Anime template.

- ≥When a Decome-Anime template is already selected, the Edit Decome-Anime display appears. Go to step 4.
- ≥You can show the preview of the Decome-Anime template by pressing
  ⊠(⌐Play⌐) from the Decome-Anime Template list.
- ≥When you select a Decome-Anime template, "⌐⌐⌐⌐" appears.
- ≥Depending on the Decome-Anime template, you cannot edit contents.
- ≥When you send the contents of the Decome-Anime template as they are, go to step 5.
- ≥You cannot edit the Decome-Anime text when you re-edit it from the Draft or Outbox or when you forward it from the Inbox.

4 **Select the contents field to be edited.**

⌐ To edit characters ⌐
Select the character entry field▶Edit characters.

⌐ To change images ⌐
Select the image entry field
▶Select a folder, and select the image to be changed.

- ≥You can show the preview by pressing ⌐MENU⌐(⌐Preview⌐) from the Edit Decome-Anime display.
- ≥When you enter characters, you cannot set decoration for them and cannot enter Deco-mail pictograms. In addition, you cannot paste header or signature.
- ≥When you insert a line feed in the middle of a line, the number of characters you can enter decreases.
- ≥When the total size of Decome-Anime template, characters, and images exceeds 90 Kbytes, you can no longer enter characters and images.
- ≥Depending on the Decome-Anime template, you might not be able to insert images even if the total size is 90 Kbytes or less.
- ≥As the fonts and display position of images and characters are fixed, you cannot edit them.
- ≥Depending on the character entry field, ⌐ (red) which shows the line feed position or ▶ (orange) which shows the nonenterable area may appear on the Character Entry (Edit) display.

5 **⊠(⌐Finish⌐)**
The editing of the Decome-Anime message is completed.
Go to step 6 on page 142.

⌐ Information ⌐

- ≥You cannot create a Decome-Anime message when sent mail messages in the Outbox are saved to the maximum and all of them are protected, when 20 draft mail messages are saved, or when the Draft is full.
- ≥The images you can insert into Decome-Anime messages are GIF files (including animation GIF), JPEG files, and SWF files.
- ≥When animation GIF files or SWF files are inserted, the volume overflow for sending might occur.
- ≥Even when sending fails, you cannot re-edit it.
- ≥In the character entry field of some Decome-Anime templates, the text such as "使い方 (how to use)" is pre-entered. Delete it before sending.
- ≥When you send a Decome-Anime message, the mail message with the URL for browsing is received at some destination i-mode phones. However, only the Decome-Anime text without the URL for browsing might be received at some models.
- ≥You cannot use the received Decome-Anime message as a template.

Function Menu of the Create Decome-Anime Display

Send	You can send the Decome-Anime message. Go to step 7 on page 143.
Preview	You can check the playback of Decome-Anime message before sending. ≥See page 153 for how the Decome-Anime messages are played back. ≥Press ⌐i∝⌐(⌐Exit⌐) to return to the Create Decome-Anime display.
Save	You can save the Decome-Anime message you are creating to the Draft. After saving, you cannot re-edit the text of the Decome-Anime message. ▶**YES** ≥When you save it before selecting a Decome-Anime template, it is saved as an i-mode mail message.
Operate receiver	See page 143.

Operate att. file	See page 144.
Template	You can read in a Decome-Anime template to create a Decome-Anime message. ▶**Phone or microSD** ▶**Select a Decome-Anime template.** Go to step 4 on page 150. ●If any Decome-Anime template is selected, the confirmation display appears asking whether to discard the current contents to read in the new one.

Function Menu of the Edit Decome-Anime Display
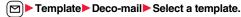
Template	See page 151.
Preview	See page 150.
Delete	You can delete the entered image. The image entry field becomes blank.
Quit editing	You can end the editing of the Decome-Anime message. Go to step 6 on page 142.

The template is the form data in which text and images are inserted. Deco-mail templates and Decome-Anime templates are available. Besides pre-installed templates, you can download templates from sites (see page 200). You can save the sent/received/created Deco-mail messages as the Deco-mail templates (see page 144 and page 170). You can edit the saved Deco-mail templates using Palette. You cannot edit the Decome-Anime templates.

●You can delete the pre-installed templates. You can re-download them from the "P-SQUARE" site (see page 202). When you use a UIM other than the one used for downloading, the UIM security function (see page 37) is set for them.

Deco-mail Template

1 ▶**Template**▶**Deco-mail**▶**Select a template.**

●Press ⬚(NewMail) to create a Deco-mail message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 142.
●Even if you set "Header/signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, you cannot paste it.
●See page 201 when you select "Search by i-mode".

Deco-mail Template list

Detailed Deco-mail Template display

© SOCKETS

Function Menu of the Deco-mail Template List

Compose message	You can create a Deco-mail message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 142.
Sort	You can change the order of displayed templates. ▶Select an order.
Edit title	▶Enter a title. ●You can enter up to 15 full-pitch/30 half-pitch characters.
Info	You can display the file size, saved date and time of the template, and whether it contains images.
No. of templates	You can display the number of saved templates.
Delete	
Delete this	▶YES
Delete selected	▶Put a check mark for templates to be deleted ▶c(Finish)▶YES
Delete all	▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

Function Menu of the Detailed Deco-mail Template Display

Compose message	You can create a Deco-mail message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 142.
Edit	You can edit the contents of the template and save it. ▶Edit the text▶●(Save)▶YES or NO **YES**. . . . Overwrites and saves. **NO**. . . . . Saves as a separate file. ●See step 2 and step 3 on page 146 for how to edit the text. ●See page 201 when the templates are stored to the maximum.

Save insert image	You can save images inserted into the template or Deco-mail text, and set them as the Stand-by display and Wake-up display. ▶Select an image▶YES▶Select a destination folder. Go to step 3 on page 199. ●See page 201 when images are stored to the maximum.

Information

<Edit>
●The title name when saved as a separate file takes "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: Year, M: Month, D: Date, h: hour, m: minute).

<Save insert image>
●Deco-mail pictograms are saved to the "お気に入り (Favorite)" folder in the "Deco-mail pictograms" folder.

Decome-Anime Template

1 **c▶Template▶Decome-Anime▶Phone or microSD**

●See page 201 when you select "Search by i-mode".

2 **Select a template.**

The preview of the template is displayed.
●Press c(NewMail) to create the Decome-Anime message with the template contents. Go to step 2 on page 149.

© SOCKETS

Decome-Anime
Template list

Preview

When you show the Decome-Anime Playback display or preview

The animation is played back automatically. The effect tones may sound and the FOMA terminal may vibrate for some Decome-Anime messages. Further, you can operate from the playback display or preview of some Decome-Anime messages by using ⊙, ⊙, ⊙ through ⑨, ⌗, or ⊛.

- ≥Press [MENU](▐▐) to pause the animation and effect tone during playback. Press [MENU](▶) again to resume the animation playback.
- ≥The effect tone sounds following the setting of "Auto melody play". Each time you show the preview from the Decome-Anime Template list, the effect tone sounds regardless of the setting.
- ≥The effect tone does not sound during Play Background.
- ≥The FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the setting of "Vibrator" or "Manner mode set".
- ≥Some Decome-Anime messages refer to the phone-information data in your FOMA terminal. To permit the use of the information in your FOMA terminal, set "Use phone information" of "i-mode settings" to "YES". ("YES" is set at purchase.)

Function Menu of the Decome-Anime Template List

Create Deco-Anime	You can create a Decome-Anime message using the contents of the template. Go to step 2 on page 149.
Preview	You can display the preview of the Decome-Anime template.
Edit title	▶Enter a title. ≥You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
Copy to microSD	See page 370.
Copy to phone	See page 371.
Info	You can display the title, file name, format, and whether it set with file restriction.
Ir/📶 transmission	
Send Ir data	See page 384.
Send all Ir data	See page 385.

📶 transmission	See page 387.
Delete	
Delete this	See page 152.
Delete selected	See page 152.
Delete all	See page 152.

<Attachments>
Attaching a File

You can send an i-mode mail message with files attached.
You can attach following files:
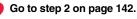
- ・**Still image**　　・**Melody**　　　　・**Movie/i-motion movie**
- ・**ToruCa file**　　・**PDF file**　　　　・**Phonebook entry**　　・**Schedule event**
- ・**ToDo item**　　　・**Bookmark (i-mode, Full Browser)**　　・**Word**
- ・**Excel**　　　　　・**PowerPoint**　　・**SD other files**

You can attach up to 10 files within 2 Mbytes in total.

- ≥You cannot attach files prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA terminal.
- ≥Regardless of the "File restriction" setting, you can attach the still image or movie/i-motion movie shot with your FOMA terminal or the files received via infrared rays.
- ≥When you attach a file, another attachment field appears on the Message Composition display.
- ≥Depending on the destination i-mode phone, only the compatible files are received within the memory space of that phone.
- ≥It might take a time to send the i-mode mail depending on the size of attached files.

1 **Message Composition display**
▶Select the attachment field
▶Do the following operations.

Picture	▶Select a folder▶Select an image. ≥Select an attached image to display it. Press [CLR] to return to the former display.
Melody	▶Select a folder▶Select a melody. ≥Select an attached melody to play it back. Press any key to stop the playback.

♪motion	▶**Select a folder**▶**Select an i-motion movie.** ≥Select the attached i-motion movie to play it back. Press `CLR` during playback or stop the playback to return to the former display.
ToruCa	When the ToruCa file is a ToruCa file (details), it is attached as a ToruCa file (details). ▶**Select a folder**▶**Select a ToruCa file.** ≥Select the attached ToruCa file to preview it. Press `CLR` to return to the former display.
PDF	▶**Select a folder**▶**Select a PDF file.** ≥Select an attached PDF file to display it. Press `CLR` to return to the former display.
Phonebook	▶**Select a search method**▶**Select a Phonebook entry** ▶○(`Select`) ≥When you specified a search method last time, the Phonebook entry is searched by that method. ≥Select the attached Phonebook entry to display the details. Press `i☆`(`Return`) or `CLR` to return to the former display.
Schedule	▶**Select a date**▶**Select a schedule event**▶○(`Select`) ≥Select the attached schedule event to display the details. Press `CLR` to return to the former display.
ToDo	▶**Select a ToDo item**▶○(`Select`) ≥Select the attached ToDo item to display the details. Press `CLR` to return to the former display.
Bookmark	▶**i-mode or Full Browser**▶**Select a bookmark.** ≥Select the attached bookmark to display the title, address, and others of the bookmark. Press `i☆`(`Return`) or `CLR` to return to the former display.
Document file	You can attach a file of Word, Excel, and PowerPoint. ▶**Select a folder**▶**Select a file.**
Other	You can attach a file stored in "SD other files". ▶**Select a folder**▶**Select a file.**

2 Go to step 2 on page 142.

Information

<Picture>
≥The images are not sent as the attachments to i-mode phones of the mova service; they are in the form of URLs for browsing images and automatically attached with expiry dates and can be obtained by selecting URLs. The mail text that can be sent to an i-mode phone of the mova service is up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes). (When the acceptable number of characters of the mova phone is "250 full-pitch characters")
When multiple files are attached, the files are deleted and just the mail text is sent.
≥The i-mode phone of the mova service cannot receive GIF images.
≥You can attach a Flash movie as well.
≥The still image might not be received correctly or not be displayed or coarsely displayed depending on the model at the receiving end.

<Melody>
≥Melodies stored on the microSD card cannot be attached. Copy the melodies to the FOMA terminal. (See page 373)
≥If the receiving end is other than P-02A, the sent melody might not be played back correctly or the attachment might be deleted.
≥You cannot receive the attached melody on the i-mode phone of the mova service.

<♪motion>
≥Some i-motion movies cannot be attached to mail or their file sizes may become larger or smaller.
≥Movies stored on the microSD card cannot be attached. Copy the movies to the FOMA terminal. (See page 373)
≥Depending on the mobile phone of the receiving end, i-motion movies cannot be correctly received/displayed, might become coarse, or might be converted into consecutive still images.
When sending movies to other than the 2 Mbytes compatible model, it is advisable to shoot them with the following settings:
File size setting: Mail restrict'n (S)
Image quality: Normal

<ToruCa>
≥ToruCa files stored on the microSD card cannot be attached. Copy the ToruCa files to the FOMA terminal. (See page 319)

Delete Attached File

You can delete a selected attached file or all attached files.

1 Message Composition display▶(⬛)(⬛ FUNC ⬛)
▶Operate att. file▶Delete att. file
▶Delete this or Delete all▶YES

≥To delete a single file, highlight a file to be deleted.

<Mail Auto-receive>

Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically

When the FOMA terminal is in the service area, you can receive i-mode mail, SMS messages and SMS reports automatically. (See page 156 for receiving i-mode mail after selecting it.)
When a mail message comes in, "▉(pink)" appears at the top of the display.
You can save up to 2,500 received i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

1 When i-mode mail arrives, "▉(pink)" blinks and the receiving message is displayed.

When receiving is completed, the display shows the number of received i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F.

Reception Result display

≥You can display the Inbox list by selecting "Mail".
≥To cancel receiving midway, select "Cancel" or press and hold [CLR] for at least one second while "Mail Receiving..." is displayed. However, the mail message might be received depending on the timing.
≥If no keys are pressed for about 15 seconds, " New1 " (see page 29) appears on the desktop and the former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)
Press (●), highlight " New1 ", and press (●)(⬛ Select ⬛) to display the Inbox list.

Information

≥You can automatically receive up to 100 Kbytes of an i-mode mail message including attached files. You can manually obtain the attached files in excess of 100 Kbytes from the i-mode Center. (See page 158)
≥When the received mail messages exceed the maximum number of or size of storage, they are deleted in order of mail in the "Trash box" folder and older received mail. However, unread or protected mail messages are not deleted.
≥When the total number of unread or protected mail messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new mail can be received and "▉(dark blue)" is displayed. To receive i-mode mail, delete received mail or read unread mail or release protection of mail until "▉(dark blue)" clears, and then perform "Check new messages".
≥You can receive i-mode mail with melodies, still images, or other files attached. You can receive incompatible attached files but you cannot display them.
≥When you receive mail from a device that can set To, Cc and Bcc, you can check whether the message was sent to you as To, Cc or Bcc.
≥Mail Messages received in the following cases are held at the i-mode Center:
· When the power is off · During a videophone call
· During Self Mode · When you are out of the service area
· During infrared communication · While connecting to the FirstPass center
· During PushTalk communication · During Omakase Lock
· During iC communication · While copying to the microSD card
· While connecting to the Data Storage Center
· When the space of the Inbox is full with protected or unread messages
≥When i-mode mail messages are held at the i-mode Center, "▉(pink)" appears, and when they are held to the maximum, "▉(dark blue)", appears.
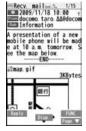
Mail

Display Newly Received i-mode Mail

1 Reception Result display▶Mail ▶Select an i-mode mail message to be displayed.

- ●For a Decome-Anime message, the Decome-Anime Playback display appears. Press (**i**α)(**Detail**) to show the detailed display.
- ●Press and hold ◯ for at least one second from the detailed i-mode mail display to change the size of characters. (See "Mail" on page 119.)

Information

- ●Undisplayable characters are replaced by spaces, etc.
- ●When the number of characters in the text of received i-mode mail exceeds the maximum, "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the text and the excess part is deleted automatically.
- ●The still image automatically displayed at opening might not be correctly displayed. When the image is larger than the screen size, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- ●Some decorations inserted into the decorated mail (HTML mail) sent from a personal computer might not be displayed correctly.

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check the titles of i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center and select them to receive, or delete them at the Center before receiving.
To use this function, set "Receive option setting" to "ON" beforehand. When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", you cannot receive i-mode mail messages automatically. When a mail message comes in the i-mode Center, "▉" is displayed.

Receive Option Setting

You can set whether to select and receive necessary i-mode mail only.

1 (⊡)▶Mail settings▶Receive option setting▶ON or OFF

Select and Receive Mail Messages

1 (⊡)▶Receive option▶Operate following the procedure described in "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- ●When "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF", the display to the effect that it will be set to "ON" appears.
  Press (●)(**Select**) to set "Receive option setting".
- ●You can show the Receive Option display also by (**i**α)▶ 🄷 Menu ▶メニューリスト (Menu List)▶メール選択受信 (Receive Option).

Information

- ●Even when Receive Option Setting is set to "ON", you will still receive all mail messages if you execute "Check new messages". If you do not want to receive all mail messages, remove a check mark from "Mail". (See page 175)
- ●When you show the Receive Option display, the "▉" icon goes off. Also, the "▉" icon goes off if you turn the power off or show the mail display.
- ●You cannot select SMS messages for receiving.

i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F arriving at the i-mode Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, the messages will be held at the i-mode Center if your FOMA terminal cannot receive mail because it is turned off or out of the service area, or when Receive Option Setting is set to "ON".

When " (pink)" is displayed, receive mail by checking the i-mode Center. See "Receive option" when " " is displayed.

1 Press and hold 📧 for at least one second.

" (pink)" and " R (yellow)/ F (yellow)" blink, the message "Checking..." is displayed, and then you receive i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F. As the checking results, the number of newly received i-mode mail messages and Messages R/F is shown.

- You can also execute "Check new msg." during a voice call by pressing 📧(⬛ FUNC).
- To cancel receiving midway, press and hold CLR for at least one second. However, the mail message might be received depending on the timing.

Information

- When icons such as " (dark blue)", " (dark blue)/ (dark blue)" or " (dark blue)" are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any more i-mode mail messages or Messages R/F. Delete unnecessary mail and messages, read unread mail and messages, or release protection. (Read and unprotected mail and messages are automatically deleted from the oldest one.)
- Even when i-mode mail messages are held at the i-mode Center, the " (pink)" icon to that effect, or the " (dark blue)" icon telling that messages are held to the maximum at the i-mode Center might not appear. (This happens if mail arrives at the Center when, for instance, your FOMA terminal is off.)
- You can select items to be checked by "Set check new messages".
- You cannot use this function to receive SMS messages. Use "Check new SMS" to receive them.

By "Rep.w/ i-mode mail", you can reply with a normal i-mode mail message, and by "Rep. w/ Deco-Anime", you can reply with a Decome-Anime message. By "Reply with quote", you can quote the text of your received i-mode mail to reply. You cannot use "Reply with quote" for Decome-Anime messages and SMS messages.

1 Inbox list/Detailed Received Mail display▶📧(⬛ FUNC)
▶Reply/forward▶Rep.w/ i-mode mail,
Rep. w/ Deco-Anime or Reply with quote

- Press 📧(⬛ Reply) to reply by i-mode mail.
- If other recipients of the simultaneous mail are found, you can choose whether to reply to the sender only or to all addresses.
Select "To sender" or "To all".
- Just one quotation mark (see page 176) is added to the beginning of the text in the i-mode mail to be replied with quote.

2 Enter a subject and text, and then send.

When you have selected i-mode mail, go to step 3 on page 142.
When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 3 on page 186.
After you send mail, " " changes to " ".

Information

- For the sender's address that cannot be replied to (such as when the mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters), " " is displayed.
- "Re:" is prefixed to the subject of the mail message to be replied or replied with a quotation. When the subject exceeds 100 full-pitch characters, the excess is deleted. (When "Re:" has already been prefixed, it changes to "Re2:" and will be counted up to "Re99:".)
- Even if the i-mode mail text contains pasted data, you cannot quote it in your reply. Also, you cannot quote it when using the DOCOMO keitai datalink or infrared communication function. See page 163 for pasted data.
- If the Deco-mail text contains images prohibited from being attached to mail or being output from the FOMA terminal, such images will be deleted when you reply.

Mail

Forwarding Received i-mode Mail

You can forward the i-mode mail or SMS messages to others.

1 Inbox list/Detailed Received Mail display▶[ia](FUNC)
▶Reply/forward▶Forward

● You can forward also by pressing [MENU](Forward) from the Inbox list.

2 Enter a subject and address, and send the mail.

When you have selected an i-mode mail message or a Decome-Anime message, go to step 2 on page 142.
When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 186.
After you send mail, " " changes to " ".

Information

● "Fw:" is prefixed to the subject of the mail message to be forwarded. When the subject exceeds 100 full-pitch characters, the excess is deleted. (When "Fw:" has already been prefixed, it changes to "Fw2:" and will be counted up to "Fw99:".)

● When you forward an i-mode mail message with a file you have not obtained yet, the file information is deleted.

● Even if the i-mode mail text contains pasted data, you cannot quote it in your forwarding mail. Also, you cannot quote it when using the DOCOMO keitai datalink or infrared communication function. See page 163 for pasted data.

● When a mail message is forwarded and a ToruCa file (details) that contains data whose output from the FOMA terminal is prohibited is attached to the mail message, the attached file returns to a ToruCa file before receiving details.

● When a mail message on the microSD card is forwarded, the attached file is deleted.

● When you "Forward" a mail/SMS message received to Address B/Number B in Dual Mode of 2in1, the sent mail message is retained in the Outbox or Draft, even if you switch to A Mode.

When i-mode Mail with Files Attached/ Pasted is Received

You can receive up to 2 Mbytes of the attached files on your FOMA terminal. However, if attached files exceed 100 Kbytes, only information of all or part of attached files is received. You need to obtain attached files again from the i-mode Center.
The FOMA terminal supports following files:

・**Still image**　　・**Melody**　　　・**Movie/i-motion movie**
・**PC movie**　　　・**ToruCa file**　・**PDF file**　　　・**Phonebook entry**
・**Schedule event**・**ToDo item**　・**Bookmark (i-mode, Full Browser)**
・**Word**　　　　　・**Excel**　　　・**PowerPoint**

You cannot play back or display the files other than above. You can save them to any folder in "SD other files", or use the i-mode mail to forward them.
You can use "Attachment preference" to select the files to be received.
● When multiple data items are pasted, they might not be displayed.

Obtain Receive Option Attached Files

You can obtain the receive option attached files held at the i-mode Center.

1 Detailed Received Mail display
▶Select an attached file which has not been obtained.

After obtaining is completed, files are played back/ displayed.

Information

● You cannot obtain the attached files when the unused memory space in the Inbox is smaller than the files.

Play Back/Display Attached or Pasted Files

You can play back or display the attached/pasted files already obtained.

1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display▶Select an attached file.

The file is played back or displayed.

- ●For a PC movie or document file, the confirmation display appears telling that you cannot play it back/display it. Play it back/display it after saving it to the microSD card.
- ●For the files which are not supported by the FOMA terminal, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save them.
- ●You can display only the first item when a file of Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items or bookmarks is attached.

Information

- ●When the sender's device is other than P-02A, the received melodies might not be played back correctly.
- ●When the first attached file is an obtained still image, that still image only is automatically displayed when the mail message is opened. The size of a still image displayed automatically is up to 5M (1944 x 2592) size.
- ●When the image size is larger than the screen, it is displayed shrunk.
- ●You cannot play back a melody in excess of 100 Kbytes.
- ●You cannot play back a Flash movie in excess of 100 Kbytes.
- ●You cannot display a ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte and ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes.

Save Attached or Pasted Files

You can save the attached or pasted files that you have obtained. You can set some files for a ring tone, or an image on the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or other displays.

1 Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display/Detailed Message R/F display
▶Highlight an attached file and press $\boxed{\mathbf{i}\alpha}$ (**FUNC**)
▶Operate file▶Save attached file▶YES

- ●PC movies are saved to the destination folder in "microSD" folder of "PC Movie".
- ●Document files are saved to the destination folder in "Document viewer".
- ●The files not supported by the FOMA terminal are saved to the destination folder in "SD other files".
- ●Even if the files are supported by the FOMA terminal, some of them cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal depending on the file such as an invalid data file or whose size is too large. In that case, the confirmation display appears asking whether to save it to the microSD card. When you save it, it is saved to a destination folder in "SD other files".
- ●The confirmation display might appear telling that a part of the file cannot be saved depending on the attached file.

2 Select a destination or folder to save to.

For melodies, go to step 3 on page 201.
For still images, go to step 3 on page 199.

- ●Bookmarks are saved according to each information of i-mode or Full Browser.
- ●If the maximum number of files has already been saved to the microSD card or there is no usable memory space when you save SD other files, PC movies, or document files, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete unnecessary files to save new files. Select "YES", and select unnecessary files from the displayed list in Data Box to delete them. See page 201 when files other than SD other files, PC movies, or document files are stored to the maximum.

Mail

Information

- ≥You cannot save a melody in excess of 100 Kbytes to the FOMA terminal.
- ≥You cannot save a Flash movie in excess of 100 Kbytes to the FOMA terminal.
- ≥You cannot save a ToruCa file in excess of 1 Kbyte and ToruCa file (details) in excess of 100 Kbytes to the FOMA terminal.

<Inbox> <Outbox> <Draft>
Displaying Mail in Inbox/Outbox/Draft

Display Mail from Inbox

You can save up to 2,500 received i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.
You can save up to 30 Area Mail messages separately from i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.
You can check the received i-mode mail messages, SMS messages, and Area Mail messages.

≥Welcome mail messages have been saved by default.

1 ⌨▶**Inbox**▶**Select a folder.**

≥See page 178 for displaying Messages R/F.

Inbox Folder list

2 **Select a mail message.**

- ≥When you select an unread mail message, " (pink)" changes to " ".
- ≥For a Decome-Anime message, the Decome-Anime Playback display appears. Some Decome-Anime messages are played back repeatedly. Press ⓘ(Detail) to show the detailed Received Mail display. See page 153 for how the Decome-Anime messages are played back.

Inbox list   Detailed Received Mail display

- ≥Use ◎ to check other mail messages. When you press ◎ to show the Decome-Anime message from the detailed Received Mail display, the Decome-Anime Playback display does not appear.
- ≥When the mail text is long, use ◎ to scroll the display to check it. Further, you can press ⓜ(Page ▲)/ⓐ(Page ▼) or ▼/▲ to scroll page by page. You cannot scroll the Decome-Anime messages.

Information

- ≥You are not charged a communication fee for welcome mail messages.
- ≥You cannot reply to welcome mail messages.
- ≥The attached melody, effect tone of the Flash movie in mail text, and effect tone of Decome-Anime text sound following the setting of "Auto melody play". However, when a mail message with an attached melody includes the effect tone of the Flash movie in mail text or effect tone of Decome-Anime text, the melody is preferentially played back. The effect tone does not sound.
- ≥The melody and effect tone do not sound during Play Background.

Display Mail from Outbox

You can save up to 1,000 sent i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.
You can check the sent i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.

1 ⊠▶Outbox▶Select a folder.

Outbox
1 🗀Outbox
2 🗀Chat
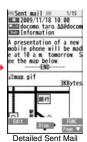
Outbox Folder list

2 Select a mail message.

- ●For a Decome-Anime message, the Decome-Anime Playback display appears. Press 🔟(Detail) to show the detailed Sent Mail display. See page 153 for how the Decome-Anime messages are played back.
- ●Use ◉ to check other mail messages. When you press ◉ to show the Decome-Anime message from the detailed Sent Mail display, the Decome-Anime Playback display does not appear.
- ●When the mail text is long, use ◉ to scroll the display to check it. Further, you can press 🔟(Page ▲)/(Page ▼) or ▼/▲ to scroll page by page. You cannot scroll the Decome-Anime messages.

Outbox list

Detailed Sent Mail display

Information

- ●The effect tone of the Decome-Anime text sounds following the setting of "Auto melody play".
- ●The effect tone does not sound during Play Background.

Display Mail from Draft

You can edit and send i-mode mail messages and SMS messages in the Draft. You can save up to 20 i-mode mail messages including SMS messages.

1 ⊠▶Draft

Draft 1/4
1 📧10:00 docomo.taro.ΔΔ
Information
2 📧11/17 090XXXXXXXX
How is it going?
3 📧11/17 docomo.taro.ΔΔ
Tonight's plan
4 📧11/17 090XXXXXXXX
Please give me a cal
A presentation of a new
mobile phone will be mad
e at 10 a.m. tomorrow. S
ee the map below.
-----END-----

Draft list

2 Select a mail message.

When you have selected i-mode mail, go to step 2 on page 142. When you have selected an Decome-Anime message, go to step 2 on page 149. When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 186.

Information

- ●When you select the i-αppli mail folder, the mail-linked i-αppli that supports the folder starts.

How to See Inbox/Outbox/Draft List and Detailed Display

■**Mail menu**

Icons might have the following marks:

NEW	Unread mail messages or messages are stored in the Inbox.
(exclamation)	Failed-to-send mail messages are stored in the Outbox. Draft mail messages are stored in the Draft.
(key)	"Mail security" is activated. (displayed also for chat mail)

◀　Mail　▶
- ❶ Inbox
- ❷ Outbox
- ❸ Draft
- ❹ Compose message
- ❺ Create new Decome-Anime
- ❻ Template
- ❼ Web mail
- ❽ Check new messages
- ❾ Compose SMS
- ❿ Check new SMS

New
Private | Select | FUNC

■**Inbox Folder list**

❶**Folder status**
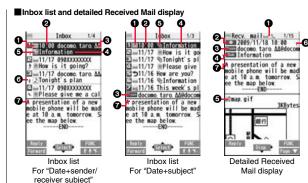
"NEW" appears when unread messages are found, and "(key)" appears when Mail Security is activated.

(folder)	Ordinary folder
(folder)	i-αppli mail folder
(folder)	Message R folder
(folder)	Message F folder
(folder)	Trash box folder

❷**Folder name**

Inbox
- ❶ Inbox
- MessageR
- MessageF
- Chat
- Trash box
❷

■**Inbox list and detailed Received Mail display**

Inbox list
For "Date+sender/receiver subject"

Inbox list
For "Date+subject"

Detailed Received Mail display

❶**Mail status and type**

"(key)" appears when protection is set.

(pink)	Unread mail
	Read mail
(arrow)	Forwarded mail
(arrow)	Replied mail
	Type of the received mail (Detailed display only)

❷**Received date and time**

The Inbox list shows the time for the mail received today, and shows the date for the mail received until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was received. The Japanese date and time the mail was received from the Center is displayed.

❸**Phone number or mail address of the sender or of another recipient of simultaneous mail**

From	Sender's mail address (Detailed display only)
Fm	Sender's mail address that cannot be replied to (Detailed display only)
To　Cc	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail (Detailed display only)
	Recipient's mail addresses of simultaneous mail that cannot be replied to (Detailed display only)

❹Subject

The number of characters you can display on the list varies depending on the setting of "Mail list display", and "Mail" of "Font size". When a file is attached, it is decreases by 1 full-pitch/2 half-pitch character/s as the icon is added at the top.

For SMS messages or Area Mail messages, the beginning of the text is displayed. ("SMS" or "Area Mail" is displayed on the detailed display.)

In Dual Mode of 2in1, " " is displayed at the end of the subject or sender's address of i-mode mail messages/SMS received to Address B/Number B.

(blue)	SMS messages in the FOMA terminal		Area Mail
	SMS messages on the UIM		

❺Attached or pasted data

The detailed display shows the data volume as well.

<For Inbox list (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed Received Mail display>

" " is added to each icon when you execute "Delete att. file" (Detailed display only).

	Melody file		Attached file before obtaining (Detailed display only)
	Image file		Attached file suspended to be obtained (Detailed display only)
	Inserted image file (List only)		Attached file failed to be obtained (Detailed display only)
	i-motion movie file		i-αppli start information (List only)
	PC movie file		
	ToruCa file		i-αppli mail (List only)
	PDF file		Multiple files (List only)
	Document file		Multiple pasted files
	Phonebook entry file		File with the UIM security
	Schedule event or ToDo item file		
	Bookmark file		
	Other files		

<For Inbox list (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

	Attached file		File with the UIM security
	i-αppli mail		

❻Feel＊Mail icon

When you press ( ) from Inbox list, the Feel＊Mail image is played back. See page 177 for Feel＊Mail.

❼Text of mail

■Outbox Folder list
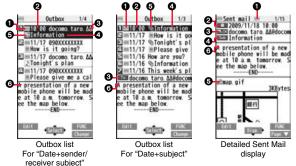
❶Folder status

" " appears when Mail Security is activated.

	Ordinary folder
	i-αppli mail folder

❷Folder name

Mail

■**Outbox list and detailed Sent Mail display**

Outbox list
For "Date+sender/
receiver subject"

Outbox list
For "Date+subject"

Detailed Sent Mail
display

❶Mail status

"🔒" appears when protection is set.

▨ (pink)	Mail successfully sent
▨	Mail failed to be sent
▨	Simultaneous mail successfully sent to all addresses
▨ (gray)	Simultaneous mail sent to some addresses
▨ (pink)	Simultaneous mail failed to be sent to all addresses

❷Sent date and time

The Outbox list shows the time for the mail sent today, and shows the date for the mail sent until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the mail was sent.

"🕐" appears when the date/time is corrected.

❸Recipient's phone number or mail address

▨·OK ▨·OK ▨·OK	Mail address successfully sent (Detailed display only)
▨·✕ ▨·✕ ▨·✕	Mail address failed to be sent (Detailed display only)

❹Subject

The number of characters you can display on the list varies depending on the setting of "Mail list display", and "Mail" of "Font size". When a file is attached, it is decreases by 1 full-pitch/2 half-pitch character/s as the icon is added at the top.

For SMS messages, the beginning of the text is displayed. ("SMS" is displayed on the detailed display.)

▨ (blue)	SMS messages in the FOMA terminal	▤	SMS report received [List (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed display only]
▨	SMS messages on the UIM		

❺Attached data

The detailed display shows the data volume as well.

<For Outbox list (Date+sender/receiver subject) and detailed Sent Mail display>

"🗑" is added to each icon when you execute "Delete att. file" (Detailed display only).

♪	Melody file	▨	Phonebook entry file
▨	Image file	▨	Schedule event or ToDo item file
▨	Inserted image file (List only)		
▤	i-motion movie file	▨	Bookmark file
▨	PC movie file	▨	Other files
▨	ToruCa file	▨	i-αppli mail (List only)
▨	PDF file	◎	Multiple files (List only)
▨	Document file	▨	File with the UIM security
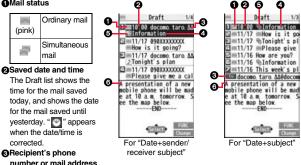
<For Outbox list (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

◎	Attached file	▨	File with the UIM security
▨	i-αppli mail		

❻Text of mail

■**Draft list**

①**Mail status**

(pink)	Ordinary mail
	Simultaneous mail

②**Saved date and time**

The Draft list shows the time for the mail saved today, and shows the date for the mail saved until yesterday. " " appears when the date/time is corrected.

③**Recipient's phone number or mail address**

④**Subject**

The number of characters you can display on the list varies depending on the setting of "Mail list display", and "Mail" of "Font size". When a file is attached, it is decreases by 1 full-pitch/2 half-pitch character/s as the icon is added at the top.
For SMS messages, the beginning of the text is displayed.

(blue)	SMS messages

⑤**Attached data**

<For Date+sender/receiver subject>

	Melody file
	Image file
	Inserted image file
	i-motion movie file
	PC movie file
	ToruCa file
	PDF file
	Document file

	Phonebook entry file
	Schedule event or ToDo item file
	Bookmark file
	Other files
	Multiple files (List only)
	File with the UIM security

For "Date+sender/ receiver subject"

For "Date+subject"

<For (Date+subject) (Date+sender/receiver)>

	Attached file
	File with the UIM security

⑥**Text of mail**

Information

- ●See "Mail list display" on page 175 to change a method to display the Inbox/Outbox/ Draft list.
- ●When "Name in phonebook" of "Mail list display" is checked, the name stored in the Phonebook is displayed as sender or recipient. However, when the sender's mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the name is not displayed even when "phone number@docomo.ne.jp" is stored in the mail address field in a Phonebook entry. Store the phone number part only to display the name. When a sender's/ recipient's phone number or mail address matches a Phonebook entry stored as secret data, the name is not displayed. It is displayed in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only.
  Even when a sender's/recipient's phone number or mail address matches a Phonebook entry not stored as secret data, the name is not displayed in Secret Data Only. Switch to Secret Mode or release Secret Data Only to display the name.
- ●When "Message" of "Mail list display" is not checked, the text does not appear on the Inbox/Outbox/Draft list.

Managing Mail Messages

Function Menu of the Inbox Folder List/Outbox Folder List

Operate folder

Add folder	You can add a new folder. You can add up to 22 folders to each of "Inbox" and "Outbox". ▶**Enter a folder name.** ≥You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
Edit folder name	You can edit the names of the added folders only. ▶**Edit the folder name.** ≥You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
Sort folder	You can sort folders. You can sort the added folders, Message R/F folder, and the i-αppli mail folders. ▶**Use ◯ to sort the order**▶◯(⌊Select⌋)
Delete folder	All the mail messages including secret mail in the folder will be deleted as well. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

Open folder	You can display the mail messages in the i-αppli mail folder without running mail-linked i-αppli.
Read all [Inbox Folder only]	You can change unread mail in the folder to already-read mail. ▶**YES**

Sort

Re-sort in this	You can resort mail messages following the sorting conditions specified by "Auto-sort". ▶**YES** ≥When the folder is applied with Mail security (see page 166), you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
Re-sort in all	You can resort mail messages in all Inbox/Outbox folders following the sorting conditions specified by "Auto-sort". ▶**YES** ≥When the folder applied with Mail security (see page 166) is found, you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
Auto-sort	See page 172.

Mail security	You can set the folder to open only when you enter your Terminal Security Code. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES** ≥To release it, perform the same operation.

Ir/🔲 transmission

Send all Ir data	See page 385.
All 🔲 transmission	See page 387.

No. of messages	You can display the number of stored received mail messages, Messages R/F, and sent mail messages.

Delete

DEL all read mails [Inbox Folder only]	You can delete all the read mail messages including secret mail in all Inbox folders. All the read SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**
DEL all recv. mails [Inbox Folder only]	You can delete all the mail messages including secret mail in all Inbox folders. All the received SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**
DEL all sent mails [Outbox Folder only]	You can delete all the mail messages including secret mail in all Outbox folders. All sent SMS messages on the UIM are deleted as well. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

Information

<Delete folder>
●You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if corresponding mail-linked i-αppli exists. If the software program does not exist, you can delete the i-αppli mail folder, but this will delete both folders created in the Outbox Folder list and Inbox Folder list.

<Re-sort in this> <Re-sort in all>
●You cannot re-sort the mail messages in the "Chat" folder and "Trash box" folder.
●Mail messages which are not applied to the sorting conditions are sorted into the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.

<Mail security>
●You can neither delete the Mail-Security-activated folder nor edit its name.

Function Menu of the Inbox List/Outbox List/Draft List

Reply/forward		
Rep.w/ i-mode mail [Inbox only]	See page 157.	
Rep. w/ Deco-Anime [Inbox only]	See page 157.	
Reply with quote [Inbox only]	See page 157.	
Forward [Inbox only]	See page 158.	
Edit [Outbox only]	You can re-edit the sent mail message and send it again. When you have selected an i-mode mail message, go to step 2 on page 142. When you have selected a Decome-Anime message, go to step 2 on page 149. When you have selected an SMS message, go to step 2 on page 186.	

Protect		
Protect ON/OFF [Inbox/Outbox]	You can protect the mail message so that it is not overwritten and deleted. You can protect all the received and sent messages. (2,500 received messages, 1,000 sent messages) The protected one is indicated by "🔒". ●To release protection, perform the same operation. ●You can switch between protected and unprotected also by pressing ⒈ from the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display.	
ProtectSLCT. ON/OFF [Inbox/Outbox]	▶**Put/Remove a check mark for mail messages to be protected/unprotected**▶⒨(Finish) ●A check mark is placed to the mail already protected.	

Move/copy		
Move [Inbox/Outbox]	▶**Select a destination folder** ▶**Put a check mark for mail messages to be moved**▶⒨(Finish)▶**YES**	
Move to trash [Inbox only]	You can move mail messages to the "Trash box" folder. The mail messages moved to the "Trash box" folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted). ▶**Put a check mark for mail messages to be moved to the trash box**▶⒨(Finish)▶**YES**	
UIM operation [Inbox/Outbox]	You can copy or move the mail message to the UIM or FOMA terminal. (See page 419)	
Copy to microSD	See page 370.	
Store in Center	See page 136.	

Search/sort		
Search mail		

Search sender/ Search receiver [Inbox/Outbox]	You can retrieve mail messages with a mail address or phone number of a sender or recipient. "Search sender" for received mail and "Search receiver" for sent mail are displayed respectively. ▶**Select an item.** **Phonebook** . . . . .Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. **Received address** . . .Select a phone number or mail address and press (●)(**Select**). **Sent address** . . . . . . .Select a phone number or mail address and press (●)(**Select**). **Enter address**. . . . . . .Enter the mail address or phone number. ≥You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.	
Search subject [Inbox/Outbox]	You can retrieve mail messages with a subject. ▶**Enter a subject.** ≥You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.	
Search subject+msg [Inbox/Outbox]	You can retrieve mail messages with a subject or text. ▶**Enter a part of a subject or text.** ≥You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.	
Sort [Inbox/Outbox]	You can change the order of displayed mail messages. ▶**Select an order.**	
Filter [Inbox/Outbox]	You can display the mail messages only that satisfy the condition. ▶**Select a type.**	
Display all [Inbox/Outbox]	You can re-display all mail messages in "By date ↑" order after using Search Mail, or the Sort or Filter function.	

Mail history [Inbox/Outbox]	You can display the history of sent/received mail from the sender or to the recipient being selected or displayed. Up to 1,000 histories are displayed in the chronological order from the most recent one. ▶**Select a sender's or destination address.** The target sent/received mail histories are displayed. ◀ . . . . .Sent mail ▶ . . . . .Received mail ≥Select a history to show the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display. Press CLR to return to the former display. ≥You can display also by pressing 7 on the detailed Received Mail display or detailed Sent Mail display.	
Color label [Inbox/Outbox]	You can color the characters on the Inbox list and Outbox list for classifying mail. Select "Default" to set ordinary font color. ▶**Select a color.**	
List setting	You can select the item to be displayed on the list. You can also switch between the name stored in the Phonebook and the mail address/phone number for the display in the sender's/destination address field. You can set to list the mail messages by subject depending on the setting of "Mail list display". ▶**Select an item to be displayed.** ≥You can switch each time you press 📷(**Change**) from the Outbox list and Draft list.	
Ir/ 📳 transmission		
Send Ir data	See page 384.	
Send all Ir data [Draft only]	See page 385.	
📳 transmission	See page 387.	
All 📳 transmission [Draft only]	See page 387.	

No. of messages	You can display the number of stored received mail messages, sent mail messages and draft mail messages.

Delete

Delete this	▶YES
Delete selected	▶Put a check mark for mail messages to be deleted ▶⊠(Finish)▶YES
Delete read mails [Inbox only]	You can delete all the read mail messages in the folder. ▶YES
Delete all SMS-R [Inbox only]	You can delete all the SMS reports. While SMS reports are displayed by the Search Mail function or Filter function, only the displayed SMS reports are deleted. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES
DEL all frm folder [Inbox/Outbox]	You can delete all mail messages in the folder. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES
Delete all [Draft only]	You can delete all the draft mail messages. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

Information

<Edit>
≥To use "Mail group" for destination addresses, delete all the entered addresses, press ⊠(Finish) to complete the deletion, and then re-select the address field.

<Protect>
≥You cannot protect mail messages in the "Trash box" folder.
≥If you protect all the sent messages which are stored to the maximum, you can no longer compose i-mode mail messages.

<Move to trash>
≥If you move unread mail to the Trash box, it changes to read mail.

<Search subject> <Search subject+msg>
≥Even if you set "No title", you cannot search for the i-mode mail whose subject is not entered and displayed as "No title".

Information

<Color label>
≥Color Label applied to the mail messages is released when they are copied to the microSD card, copied/moved to the UIM, copied/moved from the UIM or sent via infrared rays or iC transmission.
≥Color Label applied to the SMS messages on the UIM is released when the UIM is dismounted and then mounted.

Function Menu of the Detailed Received Mail Display/ Detailed Sent Mail Display

Reply/forward

Rep.w/ i-mode mail [Received Mail only]	See page 157.
Rep. w/ Deco-Anime [Received Mail only]	See page 157.
Reply with quote [Received Mail only]	See page 157.
Forward [Received Mail only]	See page 158.

Edit [Sent Mail only]	See page 167.

Resend [Sent Mail only]	You can re-send the sent mail message. ▶YES

Protect ON/OFF	See page 167.

Move/copy

Copy	▶Select an item to be copied. ≥See page 436 for how to copy. ≥When the addresses of the sender and another recipient of simultaneous mail are found or the multiple destination addresses are found, select a mail address or phone number to be copied.
Move	▶Select a destination folder.

Move to trash [Received Mail only]	You can move the mail to the "Trash box" folder. The mail messages moved to the "Trash box" folder are preferentially overwritten (deleted). ▶YES
UIM operation	You can copy or move the mail to the UIM or FOMA terminal. (See page 419)
Copy to microSD	See page 370.
Store in Center	See page 136.

Operate file

Save attached file	See page 159.
Save insert image	See page 152.
Save D-pictograms [Received Mail only]	You can save Deco-mail pictograms in the mail text at once. You can save up to 20 of them. ▶YES ●See page 201 when the Deco-mail pictograms are stored to the maximum. ●See page 344 for how to check the stored Deco-mail pictograms.
Save as template	You can save the sent/received Deco-mail message as a template. ▶YES ●See page 201 when the templates are stored to the maximum. ●See page 151 for how to check the stored template.
Property	You can display the file name and file size of the image inserted into the text. ▶Select an image.
Delete att. file	▶YES

Store

Store address	See page 92.

Add to phonebook	See page 92.
Auto-sort	You can store a sender or subject as a sort condition. (See page 172)
Add desktop icon	See page 31.

Mail history	See page 168.
Color label	See page 168.

Display

Name/address	You can display the sender's/destination address by the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address/phone number. ●You can switch also by pressing ⑤.
Scroll	See page 175.
Font size	See "Mail" on page 119.

Display SMS report [Sent Mail only]	You can check the result of the SMS message you sent, or the date and time it arrived at the destination. To receive the SMS report, set "SMS report request" to "ON".

Ir/🔁 transmission

Send Ir data	See page 384.
🔁 transmission	See page 387.

Delete	▶YES ●You can delete the mail message also by pressing ⓞ.

Information

<Resend>
●If you re-send a failed-to-send mail message, it is saved as the sent mail message. If you re-send the failed-to-send simultaneous message to all addresses, it is saved as the sent mail message.

\<Sent Address\> \<Received Address\>
Displaying Sent/Received Mail Record

Sent and received i-mode mail messages and SMS messages are stored in Sent Address and Received Address, up to 30 messages each. You can check the list for the mail addresses and phone numbers. When you exchange mail messages with the same mail address or phone number, the older one is deleted.

●In Dual Mode of 2in1, up to 60 records for Address A/Number A and Address B/ Number B are stored in Received Address in total.

1 When Using Sent Address

Press and hold ○ for at least one second.

MAIL : i-mode mail successfully sent
SMS : SMS message successfully sent
MAIL : i-mode mail failed to be sent
SMS : SMS message failed to be sent
● : Time-difference corrected time

Sent Address list

●Press MENU(Change) from the Sent Address list to display Redial. When the Sent Address list is displayed from Dialed Calls, you can press MENU(Change) to display Dialed Calls.

When Using Received Address

Press and hold ○ for at least one second.

MAIL : i-mode mail
SMS : SMS message
● : Time-difference corrected time
B : i-mode mail message/SMS received to Address B/ Number B (only in Dual Mode of 2in1)

Received Address list

●Press MENU(Change) from the Received Address list to display Received Calls.

2 Select a record to be displayed.

The detailed display of the Address list is displayed.

●With an SMS message for which the other party's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed.
●To send i-mode mail to the displayed address, press ●(⬚) and go to step 3 on page 142. To send an SMS message to the displayed phone number, press ●(⬚) and go to step 3 on page 186.
●To store in the Phonebook, press MENU(Store). Go to step 2 of "Storing Displayed Phone Number/Mail Address in Phonebook" on page 93.

Function Menu while Sent/Received Address is Displayed

Add to phonebook	See page 92.
Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message. The mail address is entered in the address field. Go to step 3 on page 142.
Compose SMS	You can compose an SMS message. The phone number is entered into the address field. Go to step 3 on page 186.
Dialing	When the mail address is stored in a Phonebook entry, you can make a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call to the phone number stored in the Phonebook. ▶**Select a dialing type.** ●When you select "Select image", select an image to be sent to the other party during a videophone call. To cancel the setting, select "Release". ●When multiple phone numbers are stored in a Phonebook entry, you can dial the first phone number. ▶**Dial** ●The set item is indicated by "★". ●To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist", select an international call access code, and follow the procedure above after selecting "Dialing" from the Function menu. (See page 59) ●To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 of "Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call" on page 56)

Feel＊Mail [Received Address only]	The Feel＊Mail image is played back. See page 177 for Feel ＊Mail. ● You can play back the Feel＊mail image also by pressing (📷)(　　　).	
Font size	You can switch the font sizes for Redial, Dialed Calls, Received Calls, Sent Address, and Received Address. (See "Dialed/recv. calls" on page 120)	
Redial/Dialed calls [Sent Address only]	You can display the Redial list or the Dialed Call list.	
Received calls [Received Address only]	You can display the Received Call list. All received calls (all calls) are displayed.	
Add desktop icon	See page 31.	
Delete		
	Delete this	▶YES
	Delete selected	▶Put a check mark for records to be deleted ▶(☒)(Finish)▶YES
	Delete all	▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

<Auto-sort>
Sorting Mail Automatically to Each Folder

You can automatically save the mail messages that satisfy the set conditions to the specified folder. This function applies to only the added folders and i-αppli mail folders.

1 **Inbox Folder list/Outbox Folder list**▶(i⍺)(　FUNC　)▶**Sort** ▶**Auto-sort**

Follow the operation of the Function menu list on page 173 to set "Auto-sort".
If you select a folder for which Auto-sort conditions have been set, the Auto-sort Setting display appears.

Auto-sort Storing

You can specify a sort condition and folder from the detailed Sent/ Received Mail display.

1 **Detailed Sent Mail display/Detailed Received Mail display**▶(i⍺)(　FUNC　)▶**Store**▶**Auto-sort** ▶**Do the following operations.**

Address sort	You can set the displayed sender's/recipient's address for a sorting condition. ▶Select a folder. ● When multiple addresses are found, select an address.
Subject sort	You can edit the displayed subject and set it for a sorting condition. ▶Edit the subject▶Select a folder.

To change the condition

The confirmation display appears asking whether to change the condition or to overwrite it. Select "YES" to release the set condition and set the new one.

When the same condition is set for another folder

The confirmation display appears asking whether to change the condition. Select "YES" to release the condition set for another folder and to set it for the selected folder.
● You cannot change the setting for a Mail-Security-activated folder.

When storing another address for the folder set for "Address sort"

The confirmation display appears asking whether to add the address.

Information
● You can store a total of 700 addresses in all folders.

≥When multiple conditions match, sorting is done in the priority below.
① Sort all
② Subject sort
③ Reply impossible/Send impossible
④ Address sort (Look-up address/Enter address)
⑤ Address sort (Look-up mail group)
⑥ Address sort (Look-up group)

≥Mail messages sent simultaneously to multiple members cannot be sorted by "Address sort" or "Send impossible".

≥Area Mail messages are not sorted by "Address sort".

Function Menu of the Auto-sort Setting Display

Address sort

Look-up address	You can look up a mail address or phone number in the Phonebook or Received/Sent Address and set it to the folder for sorting. ▶**Select an item.** **Phonebook** . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. **Received address** . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ●(Select). **Sent address** . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ●(Select).
Look-up group	You can set a group to be sorted into the folder. ▶**Select a group.**
Look-up mail group	You can set a mail group to be sorted into the folder. ▶**Select a mail group.**

Enter address	You can directly enter a mail address or phone number to be sorted into the folder. ▶**Enter a mail address or phone number.** ≥You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. ≥When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", enter the phone number only. You can sort SMS messages as well if you enter the phone number only.
Subject sort	You can enter the subject of i-mode mail messages to be sorted into the folder. One subject can be set per folder. ▶**Enter a subject.** ≥You can enter up to 100 full-pitch/200 half-pitch characters.
Reply impossible	You can set reply-disabled mail messages to be sorted. You can set for only one folder.
Send impossible	You can set failed-to-send mail messages to be sorted. You can set for only one folder.
Sort all	You can sort all mail messages into the i-αppli mail folder. You can set for only one i-αppli mail folder each in the Inbox and Outbox. When "Sort all" is set, other sort settings are disabled. ▶**YES**
Edit addr/subj	You can edit and store the mail address, phone number, and subject set for the folder. ▶**Edit the mail address, phone number or subject.**
List setting	You can switch whether to display the destinations by the name stored in the Phonebook or by the mail address or phone number. ▶**Name or Address** ≥You can switch also by pressing ◙(Change).

Release

Release this	You can release the sort condition. (The item is deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.) ▶**YES**

Mail

Release selected	You can select mail addresses or phone numbers, and release the sort condition for them. (The items are deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.) ▶**Put a check mark for mail addresses or phone numbers to be released**▶e(**Finish**)▶**YES**
Release all	You can release all sort conditions. (The items are deleted from the Auto-sort Setting display.) ▶**YES**

Information

<Look-up group>
≥On the Auto-sort Setting display, "🔲" is added to the top of the name.
≥You cannot set groups on the UIM.
≥The secret mail messages received in ordinary mode (not in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only") are not sorted into the folder.

<Look-up mail group>
≥On the Auto-sort Setting display, "🔲" is added to the top of the mail group name.

<Subject sort>
≥When the subject matches sort conditions for multiple folders, it is sorted to the folder nearest to the "Inbox" folder or "Outbox" folder.
≥Even if you set "No title", the i-mode mail titled with "No title" because of no entry cannot be sorted.
≥SMS messages cannot be sorted by subject.

<Sort all>
≥You cannot sort SMS reports or SMS messages that have been directly received on the UIM.

Creating Mail Group

You can store mail addresses by group. You can send mail to regular destinations.
You can store up to five addresses per group, and up to 20 groups.

1 m▶**Phonebook**
▶**Phonebook settings**▶**Mail group**
▶**Select a Mail group to be stored.**

Mail Group list

≥When mail addresses are stored in a Mail group,
"■■■" appears at the lower left of the display. Press e(■■■) to compose i-mode mail to a selected Mail group set as the destination address.
Go to step 3 on page 142.

2 **Highlight <Not stored> and press**
e(**Edit**).

Detailed Mail Group display

≥If you select a stored mail address, the Mail Group Address Confirmation display appears.

3 **Enter a mail address.**

≥You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
≥When you store multiple mail addresses, repeat step 2 and step 3.

Function Menu of the Mail Group List

Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message to the Mail group. Go to step 3 on page 142.
Edit group name	▶**Enter a name of the Mail group.** ≥You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
Reset group name	You can reset the name of Mail group to the default. ▶**YES**

Mail

Function Menu of the Detailed Mail Group Display/Mail Group Address Confirmation Display

Edit address	Go to step 3 on page 174. ●You can edit the address also by pressing 📧(Edit).
Look-up address	You can call up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it. ▶**Select an item.** **Phonebook**. . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. **Sent address** . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ⏺(Select). **Received address** . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ⏺(Select).
Delete this	▶**YES**
Delete all	▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

<**Mail Settings**>
Setting Mail and Messages R/F

1 📧▶**Mail settings**▶**Do the following operations.**

Scroll	You can set the number of lines that are scrolled at a time for when you press 🔘 from the detailed mail display, detailed Message R/F display, Message Composition display and preview display. ▶**Select the number of lines.**
Font size	See "Mail" on page 119.
Mail list display	You can set items to be displayed on the Inbox/Outbox/Draft list by using radio buttons or check boxes. ▶**Select a display format**▶📧(Finish)
Message display	You can set whether to display received mail in standard display (from the top) or from the text. ▶**Standard or From message**

Mail security	See page 133.
Secret mail display	See page 133.
Auto color label	You can specify the text color of the sender, received date/time and others on the Inbox list by mail address. You can store up to 10 items. ▶<**Not stored**>▶**Select an item.** **Phonebook**. . . . . .Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. **Sent address** . . . . . . .Select a phone number or mail address and press ⏺(Select). **Received address** . . .Select a phone number or mail address and press ⏺(Select). **Enter address**. . . . . . .Enter a mail address or phone number. ●To change the set color, press ⓘ(FUNC) and select "Select color". ●To delete the set item, press ⓘ(FUNC) and select "Delete" → "Delete this" or "Delete all" and select "YES". If you select "Delete all", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code. ▶**Select a color.**
Pred. conv. at reply	You can set whether to preferentially display the words contained in the subject and text of the received mail message as conversion candidates when you reply to, reply with quote to, or forward it. ▶**ON or OFF**
Header/signature	See page 176.
Set check new messages	You can select items to be checked from among i-mode mail, Message R and Message F, for when you perform "Check new messages". ▶**Put a check mark for the items to be checked** ▶📧(Finish)
Auto-display	See page 178.

Receiving display	You can set whether to display the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays, even during operation of another function. ▶**Alarm preferred or Operation preferred** **Alarm preferred** . . .Prioritizes the Message Receiving and Reception Result displays when you have new mail. **Operation preferred** . . .Prioritizes the display of the current operation when you have new mail.
Receive option setting	See page 156.
Attachment preference	You can set whether to receive the attached file with an i-mode mail message. The attached files for which you remove a check mark are held at the i-mode Center. (Even when you put a check mark, if attached files exceed 100 Kbytes, all or part of attached files are held at the i-mode Center.) ▶**Put a check mark for items to be received**▶( )( ) ● Put a check mark for "Tool data" to receive Phonebook entries, schedule events, ToDo items, and bookmarks. ● Put a check mark for "Other" to receive PC movies, document files, and files unsupported by the FOMA terminal.
Auto melody play	You can set whether to play back the attached or pasted melodies automatically for when you display the text of received mail, or message R/F. ▶**ON or OFF**
Feel＊Mail	See page 177.
Chat setting	See page 184.
Check settings	You can check each of "Mail settings".

Information

<Message display>

● Even if "From message" is set, the message might not be displayed from the text depending on the number of characters in the text.

<Auto color label>

● Even when you set this function, the text color of the mail message already received does not change.

Information

<Set check new messages>

● If you do not want to receive Messages R and Messages F by "Check new messages", change these settings to "   ".

<Auto melody play>

● You cannot play back attached or pasted melodies during Play Background regardless of the setting of "Auto melody play".

Header/Signature

You can store a header, signature and quotation mark. Also, you can set whether to automatically paste the header or signature.

1 ▶**Mail settings**▶**Header/signature**
▶**Do the following operations.**

Header	The header is the sentence such as greeting at the beginning of the text. ▶**Select the header field**▶**Enter a header**▶( )( ) ● You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters. ● If you do not want the header to be pasted automatically, select "Insert" to change " " to " ". See page 144 for adding a header by mail message.
Signature	The signature is your name and other information, placed at the end of the text. ▶**Select the signature field**▶**Enter a signature** ▶( )( ) ● You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch/10,000 half-pitch characters. ● If you do not want the signature to be pasted automatically, select "Insert" to change " " to " ". See page 144 for adding a signature by mail message.
Quotation marks	The quotation mark is the symbol indicating a quotation from received mail for when you reply to mail. ▶**Enter a quotation mark.** ● You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.

Information

● You can set decorations in a header and signature.

● Even if you have put a check mark for "Insert", the header and signature cannot be pasted when you compose i-mode mail from a template or i-αppli.

Mail

Feel＊Mail

Feel＊Mail reproduces the atmosphere of a mail message by actions of 45 types of animated characters. Once you activate Feel＊Mail, a Feel＊Mail image is played back after you receive an i-mode mail/SMS message.

●To end the playback, press ⌒ or CLR.

11 / 18 (Wed) 10:00

1 ⌐▶**Mail settings**▶**Feel＊Mail**
▶**Do the following operations.**

Disp. /play new one	A Feel＊Mail image is played back after you receive an i-mode mail/SMS message. ▶**ON or OFF** ●When this function is set to "OFF", a Feel＊Mail icon does not appear on the Received Address list/Detailed Received Address display, the Inbox list, and the detailed Received Mail display even while "Disp. /play in history" is set to "ON".
Disp. /play in history	A Feel＊Mail icon appears on the Received Address list/Detailed Received Address display, the Inbox list, or the detailed Received Mail display. ▶**ON or OFF**

<Receive Message R/F>

Receiving Messages R/F Automatically

Message services automatically deliver information you want to your FOMA terminal.

When your FOMA terminal is in the service area, it receives Messages R/F automatically from the i-mode Center.

" ▯ (yellow)" or " ▯ (yellow)" appears at the top of the display when a Message R/F is delivered.

You can save up to 100 each of received Messages R/F.

1 **When you receive a Message R/F, the " ▯ (yellow)" or " ▯ (yellow)" blinks and the message for receiving the Message R/F appears.**

After the message is received, the number of received mail messages and Messages R/F is displayed.

●You can display the Message R/F list by selecting "MessageR" or "MessageF".
●If "Auto-display" is set to other than "OFF", the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed. They are displayed for about 15 seconds.
●If no keys are pressed for the specified duration, " ▣ " or " ▣ " (see page 29) appears on the desktop and the former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)
Press ⦿, highlight " ▣ " or " ▣ ", and press ⦿(Select) to display the Message R/F list.

When unread Messages R/F are found

" ▉ " is added to "Message R/F" of i-mode menu.

Information

●Received Messages R/F are not automatically displayed while a display other than the Stand-by display is shown, while an i-αppli program is running, during Public Mode (Drive Mode), during Lock All, or during Personal Data Lock.
●When the Messages R/F exceed the maximum number of storage, they are deleted from the oldest one. Unread or protected Messages R/F are not deleted.

Information

- When the FOMA terminal cannot receive any more Messages R/F, "🖼(dark blue)" or "📧(dark blue)" is displayed. Delete unnecessary Messages R/F, read unread Messages R/F or release protection.
- When the icon "📧(yellow)" or "📧(yellow)" is displayed, the i-mode Center holds Messages R/F. When the icon "📧(dark blue)" or "📧(dark blue)" is displayed, the i-mode Center can hold no more Messages R/F. Perform "Check new messages" to receive them.
- Even after Messages R/F are displayed automatically, they are still displayed as unread ones in the Message R/F list. However, if you scroll through the messages during automatic display, they will be indicated as read ones.
- Messages R/F received in the following cases are held at the i-mode Center:
  · When the power is off   · During a videophone call
  · During Self Mode   · When you are out of the service area
  · During infrared communication   · While connecting to the FirstPass Center
  · During PushTalk communication   · During Omakase Lock
  · During iC communication   · During copy to microSD
  · While connecting to the Data Storage Center
  · When the space for Messages R/F is full with protected or unread messages

Auto-display

You can set how to automatically display Messages R/F received during standby or a voice call.

1 📧▶**Mail settings▶Auto-display**
   ▶**Select an option for automatic display.**

Information

- When you receive Messages R/F during a voice call, the message is displayed automatically after the call ends.
- The Messages R/F are not displayed automatically when "Mail security" is set for "Inbox", or when "Mail security" is set for "MessageR" folder or "MessageF" folder.

<Display Message R/F>
Reading Received Messages R/F

1 📧▶**Inbox▶MessageR or MessageF**
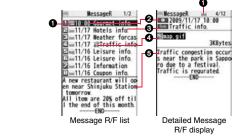   ▶**Select a Message R/F to be displayed.**

- You can display Messages R/F also by 📠▶Message R/F▶MessageR or MessageF.
- When you select an unread Message R/F, "📧 (pink)" changes to "📧".
- Use ◎ to check other Messages R/F.
- When the text of Message R/F is long, use ◎ to scroll the display to check it. Also, you can press MENU(Page ▲)/📷(Page ▼) or ▲/▼ to scroll page by page.

Message R/F list

Detailed Message R/F display

■**Message R/F list and detailed Message R/F display**

Message R/F list   Detailed Message R/F display

❶**Status of Message R/F**

"🔒" appears when protection is set.

📧 (pink)	Unread Message R/F
📧	Read Message R/F

❷Received date and time

The list shows the time for the Message R/F received today, and shows the date for the Message R/F received until yesterday. The detailed display shows the date and time the Message R/F was received.

❸Subject

❹The data attached or pasted

The detailed display shows the data volume.

♪	Valid melody file
🖼	Valid image file
🔶	Valid ToruCa file
📎	Multiple attached files
📑	Multiple pasted files
📑	File with the UIM security

❺Text of message

The phone number stored in the Phonebook is displayed by the name stored in the Phonebook.

Function Menu of the Message R/F List

Protect

Protect ON/OFF	You can protect a Message R/F not to be overwritten or deleted. You can protect up to 50 messages (Message R and Message F each). Protected messages are indicated by " 🔒 ". ●To release protection, perform the same operation.
Unprotect all	▶YES

Search/sort

Sort	You can rearrange the displaying order. ▶Select a displaying order.
Filter	You can display only Messages R/F that satisfy the condition. ▶Select a displaying type.

Display all	After you execute "Sort" or "Filter", you can reset it and list all Messages R/F by "By date ↑".
No. of messages	You can display the total number of Messages R/F stored in the FOMA terminal, as well as the number of unread messages and protected messages.

Delete

Delete this	▶YES
Delete selected	▶Put a check mark for Messages R/F to be deleted ▶⊠(Finish)▶YES
Delete read mails	You can delete all read Messages R/F. ▶YES
DEL all frm folder	You can delete all Messages R/F. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

Information

<Search/sort>
●To return to the former status, execute "Display all".
●If you close the list and re-open it, you can return to the list of all items.

Function Menu of the Detailed Message R/F Display

Protect ON/OFF | See page 179.

Operate file

Save attached file	You can save attached or pasted files. (See page 159)
Save insert image	You can save the attached image and set it as the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or another display. (See page 152)
Save BG image	▶YES▶Select a destination folder. Go to step 3 on page 199.
Save D-pictograms	You can save the all Deco-mail pictograms inserted into the text. (See page 170)

Add to phonebook	See page 92.
Delete	▶YES

Early Warning "Area Mail"

This service enables you to receive reports such as emergency earthquake alerts distributed from the Japan Meteorological Agency.

- ●You can receive Area Mail messages without i-mode contract.
- ●You cannot receive Area Mail messages in the following cases※1:
  - ・During Omakase Lock
  - ・During Self Mode
  - ・During international roaming
  - ・During a voice call
  - ・During a videophone call
  - ・While copying data files between FOMA terminal and the microSD card
  - ・During infrared communication
  - ・During iC communication
  - ・When you are out of the service area
  - ・When the power is off
- ●You might not be able to receive Area Mail messages in the following cases※1※2:
  - ・During i-mode communication
  - ・During data communication
  - ・During PushTalk communication
  - ・While accessing the Data Storage Center
  - ・While updating software program
  - ・While updating the pattern data
  - ※1 You cannot receive the message once you failed to receive it.
  - ※2 Even when you could receive it, the contents are not automatically displayed.
- ●The contents are not automatically displayed when you receive them in the following cases:
  - ・While the camera is activated
  - ・While an i-αppli program is running
  - ・During Public Mode (Drive Mode)
  - ・While operating the microSD card
  - ・During streaming playback of PC movie or i-motion movie

Receiving Early Warning "Area Mail"

When you receive an Area Mail message, the ring tone for Area Mail sounds. "Ring volume", "Ring time", and "Vibrator" follows the settings of "Mail".
When you receive an emergency earthquake alert, a dedicated buzzer (alert) sounds, and the vibrator works to notify you. Further, the contents are automatically displayed. "Ring volume" is fixed to "Level 4", and "Vibrator" is fixed to "Melody linkage", so you cannot change their settings. You can use "Area mail settings" to set "Beep time".
Up to 30 Area Mail messages are saved separately from i-mode mail messages and SMS messages in the Inbox.

1 When an Area Mail message arrives, "" lights, the message telling its arrival appears, and the Call/Charging indicator flickers.

Reception Result display

- ●If you press any key, the former display returns.
- ●The contents of some Area Mail messages might be automatically displayed when you receive them. To clear it, press (●), CLR, or .
- ●See page 160 for displaying Area Mail messages.

Information

- ●The buzzer does not sound when you receive an emergency earthquake alert with the manner setting set by "Manner mode" or "Super silent". However, the buzzer sounds with "Original" set to sound any of the following tones. When every setting is set to mute, the buzzer does not sound:
  - ・Phone volume ・Mail volume ・Alarm volume
  - ・Memo tone ・Keypad sound
- ●Even when "Vibrator" of "Original" is set to "OFF", the vibrator works if you receive an emergency earthquake alert.
- ●When a new Area Mail message comes in with 30 Area Mail messages saved, they are deleted from the read oldest one. When all 30 messages are not read, they are deleted from the oldest one.
- ●Whether the details of a received Area Mail message are displayed or not depends on the setting by the Area Mail message provider.
- ●Depending on the radio wave conditions, you may not be able to receive Area Mail messages.

<Area Mail Settings>
Setting Early Warning "Area Mail"

1 c▶**Area mail settings**▶**Do the following operations.**

Receive setting	You can set whether to use Area Mail. ▶**Read exemption clause thoroughly**▶**Yes or No**
Receive entry	You can register Message IDs for the reports to be received other than emergency information. You can register up to 20 IDs. ●You do not need to operate "Receive entry" for receiving only emergency earthquake alert and disaster/evacuation information. ▶**<New>**▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code** ▶**Enter a registration name**▶**Enter a Message ID.** ●To edit a registered Message ID, highlight it, press c(Edit), and then enter your Terminal Security Code. ●You can enter up to 15 full-pitch/30 half-pitch characters for an arbitrary registration name. For a Message ID, enter 4 half-pitch characters specified by the service provider. ●You can edit it also by selecting "Edit" from the Function menu. Select "Delete this" or "Delete all" and enter your Terminal Security Code. Then you can delete one or all Message IDs. ●You cannot edit/delete "Emergency information".
Beep time	You can set the duration the beep sounds. ▶**Enter a beep time (seconds).** ●Enter it in two digit, from "01" through "30".

<Chat Mail>
Using Chat Mail

You can send or receive chat mail messages to and from multiple persons on a single display. To use Chat Mail, you need to store chat members. You can easily store them by creating chat groups.

Store Chat Members

You can store up to six chat members including the user (yourself).

1 c▶**Chat mail**▶(FUNC)
▶**Chat member**▶**<Not recorded>**
▶**Enter a mail address.**

- ●To edit a stored member, select the member.
- ●When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.
- ●You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

Chat Member list

Information

●If you edit the mail address of the stored member, the member's name and image are changed.

Function Menu of the Chat Member List

Edit	You can edit the mail address. Go to step 1 of "Store Chat Members" on page 181.
Refer address	You can look up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Received Address, or Sent Address to enter it. ▶**Select an item.** **Phonebook** . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. **Sent address**. . . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ●(Select). **Received address** . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ●(Select).
Change member	

Chat group	You can store the members stored in a chat group as chat members.
	▶**Group list or Member list**
	Group list . . . . . You can select members by chat group.
	Member list . . . You can select members from all the members stored in chat groups.
	≥If you select "Group list", select a chat group. The members from the selected group are stored.
	≥If you select "Member list", check the members you want to store and press [✉](Finish).
	≥If you have already stored chat members, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace all the chat members.
Mail group	You can store the mail addresses stored in Mail group as chat members.
	▶**Select a Mail group.**
	≥If you have already stored chat members, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace all the chat members.
Display setting	You can check the chat member's name, image, background color, and mail address.
	≥You can press ⦿ to switch members.
	≥The mail address of the user (yourself) is not displayed.
Delete	
Delete this	▶**YES**
Delete all	▶**YES**

Exchange Chat Mail Messages

1 [✉]▶**Chat mail**

Chat Mail display

2 ⦿(Select)▶**Enter characters.**
≥You can enter up to 250 full-pitch/500 half-pitch characters.

3 Press [✉](Send).
The chat mail message is sent.
The sent chat mail message is displayed at the top of the Chat Mail display.

4 The display for receiving chat mail appears and a chat mail message is received.

The received chat mail message is displayed at the top of the Chat Mail display.
Repeat step 2 through step 4 to send and receive chat mail messages.

5 [CLR]▶**YES or NO**
YES . . . . You can delete read and sent chat mail message from the "Chat" folder.
NO . . . . . You do not delete read and sent chat mail message from the "Chat" folder.
Chat Mail ends.
≥You can end Chat Mail also by pressing [📞].
≥When no sent and received chat mail messages are found, the confirmation display does not appear.

■**Chat Mail display**

❶**Image**

The image you have stored in Chat Group is displayed.

❷**Member name**

The chat member's name store in the chat group is displayed. Also, the name is displayed with a specified background color.

≥When the name is not stored in the chat group, up to eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the mail address are displayed. When the mail address is stored in the Phonebook, up to four full-pitch/eight half-pitch characters from the beginning of the name are displayed.

Current Chat mail

Chat Mail history

❶ ❷ ❸
❹
❺

❻

❸**Broadcast mark**

Displayed when the chat mail message set with multiple addresses is received.

(blue): All addresses are stored in Chat Member.

(dark blue): Addresses that are not stored in Chat Member are found.

❹**Sent/Received date and time**

The date and time the chat mail message was sent/received are displayed. The time is displayed for the chat mail messages sent/received today and the date for the chat mail messages sent/received until yesterday.

❺**Text**

The text of chat mail message is displayed. The number of characters of the text to be displayed is up to 250 full-pitch/500 half-pitch characters.

If the text exceeds four lines, 📑 is displayed and you can switch the pages by pressing 🔘.

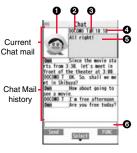≥You cannot switch the page of the text on the Chat Mail history.

≥The text of the chat mail message successfully sent is displayed in black. The text of the chat mail message failed to be sent is displayed in gray.

❻**Input box**

Entered characters (characters to send) are displayed from the beginning by a factor of one line.

Information

≥The communication fee for when you send chat mail messages to multiple chat members is the same as for sending a chat mail message to one member. (However, the information volume for the added address increases the communication fee.)

≥When "Receive option setting" is set to "ON", you cannot exchange chat mail messages.

Information

≥When the Inbox is full of unread or protected mail messages, you cannot exchange chat mail messages. Delete unnecessary mail messages or read unread mail messages, or release the protection and then operate.

≥Attached files or pasted data are not displayed.

≥Sent/Received chat mail messages are saved to the "Chat" folder.

≥The subject of a sent chat mail message is "チャットメール (chat mail)" (half-pitch characters).

≥Even when the chat mail text on the Chat Mail display contains the phone number, mail address, or URL, the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To functions are not available. However, those functions will be available when Chat Mail is finished and chat mail message is brought up from the "Inbox" or "Outbox".

≥During playing back a music file by MUSIC Player, a tone for the chat mail message does not sound.

If You Receive Chat Mail during Standby

If you receive a chat mail message during standby, " 📩 " appears on the desktop.

Press 🔘, highlight " 📩 ", and press 🔘(Select); then Chat Mail starts up.

Information

≥Messages are recognized as chat mail messages in the following cases:
· When the sender's address or destination address is stored in Chat Member or in a chat group
· When the subject contains "チャットメール (chat mail)" (all full-pitch or all half-pitch characters)

≥Even when you receive a chat mail message from a member of a chat group other than Chat Member while Chat Mail is running, " 📩 " appears.

Mail

183

If you start Chat Mail from the desktop or Chat Group

If you start Chat Mail from a mail address or from a chat group that is not stored in Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete stored member and start Chat Mail.

Select "YES"; then the current chat members are deleted and the sender's mail address or chat group members are stored in Chat Member.

If you start Chat Mail from the desktop

The sender's mail address is stored in Chat Member. When the sender's mail address has been stored in a chat group, the members in that chat group are stored in Chat Member. However, the mail address selected as the destination is only the mail address of the sender.

If you start Chat Mail from Chat Group

The chat group members are stored in Chat Member. All members of the group are selected as the destination.

Function Menu of the Chat Mail Display

Send	You can send the chat mail message.
Select receiver	From among chat members, you can select destination addresses to send the chat mail messages to. ▶Put a check mark for destination addresses to send the messages to▶[回]([Finish])
Chat member	You can store chat members. (See page 181)
Broadcast address	You can check the destination addresses you have simultaneously sent a chat mail message to. ●When there are destination addresses that are not stored in Chat Member, the confirmation display appears asking whether to store them in Chat Member. If you store them in Chat Member, select "YES" and put a check mark for the destination addresses to be stored and press [回]([Finish]).
Reload	You can receive chat mail messages that you could not automatically receive. If you receive a new chat mail message, the Chat Mail display is updated.
View first line	You can display the latest chat mail message.
View last line	You can display the oldest chat mail message.

Delete read mails	You can delete all the received read chat mail messages and sent chat mail messages including secret mail and chat mail messages failed to send. ▶YES

Information

<Broadcast address>

●You can store up to six members (including yourself) in Chat Member.

Chat Setting

1 [回]▶Mail settings▶Chat setting
▶Do the following operations.

Sound setting	You can set a tone for when you send/receive a chat mail message on the Chat Mail display. ▶Select a folder▶Select a tone. ●The tone does not sound when a chat mail message comes in from a member not stored in Chat Member.
Chat image	You can set whether to display images on the Chat Mail display. ▶ON or OFF
User setting	You can set the name and image of the user (yourself). ▶Select the name field▶Enter a user name. ●You can enter up to four full-pitch/eight half-pitch characters. ●If you do not change the user name, go to the next step. ▶Select the image field▶Select a folder▶Select an image.

<Chat Group>

MENU 2 6

Creating Chat Group

You can store the mail addresses you want to exchange chat mail per group.
By storing multiple members in a group, you can set them as chat members at a time.
You can store up to five mail addresses per group. You can create up to five groups.

1 MENU▶Phonebook
▶Phonebook settings▶Chat group
▶Select a chat group to be stored.

Chat Group list

●When the selected chat group has any member, " CHAT " appears at the lower left of the display.
If you press ⊠(CHAT), Chat group members are stored in Chat Member and Chat Mail starts. Go to step 2 on page 182.

2 Highlight <Not stored> and press ⊠(Edit).

Detailed Chat Group display

●If you select a stored mail address, the Chat Group Address Confirmation display appears.

3 Enter a mail address.

●You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.
●When the entered mail address is stored in the Phonebook, and the image is stored in the Phonebook, the image is also set.
●When the mail address is "phone number@docomo.ne.jp", store the phone number only.
●When you store multiple mail addresses, repeat step 2 and step 3.

Function Menu of the Chat Group List

| Activate chat | The members in the chat group are stored as chat members and Chat Mail starts.
Go to step 2 on page 182. |

| Edit group name | ▶Enter a chat group name.
●You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters. |
| Reset group name | You can reset the name of the chat group to the default.
▶YES |

Function Menu of the Detailed Chat Group Display/Chat Group Address Confirmation Display

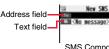| Edit | You can edit the mail address.
Go to step 3 on page 185.
●You can edit also by pressing ⊠(Edit). |
Refer address	You can look up a phone number or mail address in the Phonebook, Sent Address, or Received Address to enter it. ▶Select an item. **Phonebook** . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number or mail address. **Sent address** . . . . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ◉(Select). **Received address** . . . Select a phone number or mail address and press ◉(Select).
Change member	You can store members from a Mail group in the chat group. ▶Mail group▶Select a Mail group. ●If you have already stored members in the chat group, the confirmation display appears asking whether to replace all the members.
Member setting	You can set the member's name and image. You can switch members by pressing ◉. ▶Select the member name field▶Enter a member's name. ●You can enter up to four full-pitch/eight half-pitch characters. ●Not to change the member's name, go to the next step. ▶Select the picture field▶Select a folder▶Select an image.
Delete	▶YES
Delete all	▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

<Compose SMS>
Composing and Sending SMS

You can compose and send SMS messages. You can save up to 1,000 sent SMS messages including i-mode mail messages to the Outbox.

≥You can send and receive SMS messages to and from subscribers of overseas carriers other than DOCOMO. For the countries and overseas carriers available for the service, refer to the DOCOMO Global Service web page.

≥You can move/copy the sent SMS messages to the UIM. (See page 418)

1 ▶Compose SMS

Address field ┐
Text field ┐

New SMS
▣ <No message>

SMS Composition display

2 **Select the address field**▶**Select an item.**

Phonebook . . . . Call up a Phonebook entry and select a phone number.
Sent address . . . . Select a phone number and press ⊙(Select).
Received address . . . . Select a phone number and press ⊙(Select).
Enter address . . . . Enter a phone number.
Only one address can be specified.

≥You can enter up to 21 digits (including "+").
≥When the address is that of overseas carriers other than DOCOMO, enter "+" (press and hold ⊙ for at least one second), "country/area code", and "destination mobile phone number" in that order. When the mobile phone number begins with "0", enter the phone number except for the "0". Also, you can enter "010", "country/area code", and "destination mobile phone number" in that order to send SMS messages. (When you reply to SMS messages received from overseas, enter "010".)

3 **Select the text field**▶**Enter text.**

≥The number of characters you can enter differs depending on the "SMS input character".

4 **Press ⊠(Send).**

The animation display during transmission appears and mail is sent.

5 **OK**

Information

≥Depending on the radio wave conditions, the characters might not be sent successfully to the destination.
≥When the sent mail messages exceed the maximum number of storage, they are deleted from the oldest one. However, protected sent mail messages are not deleted.
≥You cannot compose an SMS message when sent mail messages in the Outbox are saved to the maximum and all of them are protected, when 20 draft mail messages are saved, or when the Draft is full.
Release the protection for sent mail messages, or send/delete draft mail messages, and then operate again.
≥Even if "Activate" of "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", the caller ID is notified to the other party you send an SMS message to. If you attempt to send an SMS message to the phone number headed by "184"/"186", the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete prefix numbers and send the mail.
≥If you set "SMS report request" to "ON", you cannot send SMS messages to the i-mode phone of the mova service.
≥"+" is valid only at the beginning of the address.
≥You cannot send the message to addresses that include any characters other than numbers, "#", "✳" and "+".
≥You cannot start a new line while editing the text.
≥The special symbols (see page 500) are replaced by half-pitch spaces.
≥Each space is counted as a character.
≥You cannot reply to the SMS message whose sender is User unset/PublicPhone/Unavailable.
≥In B Mode of 2in1, you cannot compose SMS messages.

Function Menu of the SMS Composition Display

Send	You can send the SMS message. Go to step 5 on page 186.
Preview	Before sending, you can check the address and the text contents. ≥Press ⊠(Send) to send the SMS message.

Save	You can save the SMS message you are composing or editing to the Draft.
	● You cannot save the message when the address field and text field are blank.
SMS report req.	See page 188.
SMS valid. per.	See page 188.
SMS input char.	See page 188.

＜Receive SMS＞
Receiving SMS Automatically

You can save up to 2,500 received SMS messages including i-mode mail messages.

● You can move/copy the received SMS messages to the UIM. (See page 418)

1 When an SMS message arrives, "🖂(pink)" lights and the receiving message is displayed.

When receiving ends, the display shows the number of received SMS messages.

Reception Result display

● You can display the Inbox list by selecting "Mail".
● If no keys are pressed for about 15 seconds, " 🖾 " (see page 29) appears on the desktop and the former display returns. (The transit time varies depending on the setting for "Mail/Msg. ring time".)
Press ⦿, highlight " 🖾 ", and press ⦿(**Select**) to display the Inbox list.

Information

● When the number of unread or protected messages in the Inbox has reached the maximum, no new messages can be received and "🖂(dark blue)" is displayed. To receive SMS messages, delete mail in the Inbox or read unread mail or release protection until "🖂(dark blue)" clears, and then perform "Check new SMS".
● When you receive concatenated SMS messages, they are displayed on the Inbox list in order of arrival at the FOMA terminal.

Display Newly Received SMS Messages

1 Reception Result display▶Mail ▶Select an SMS message to be displayed.

● Press and hold ⦿ for at least one second from the detailed SMS display to change the size of characters. (See "Mail" on page 119)
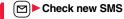
Information

● Depending on the characters entered in the received SMS message, spaces might be displayed.
● While the sender's address (phone number) is highlighted in the displayed SMS message, you can press ⦿(**Select**) to make a voice call, videophone call, or PushTalk call to the displayed number (the Phone To/AV Phone To function). Further, if the sender's phone number is stored in the Phonebook, the stored "name" is highlighted. In this case, you can dial the phone number in the same way.
● A Short Mail message is received as an SMS message on the FOMA terminal. When the sender does not notify you of the phone number, the reason is displayed in the sender's field.

＜Check New SMS＞
Checking New SMS

When SMS messages arrive at the SMS Center, they are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but will be held at the SMS Center if your FOMA terminal cannot receive messages such as when it is off or out of the service area.

You can receive the messages by "Check new SMS".

1 🖂▶Check new SMS

2 Return

If the Center holds SMS messages, the FOMA terminal automatically receives them.

Information

● Some SMS messages are not delivered immediately after checking.

Information

● When "□ (dark blue)" or "▤ (dark blue)", etc. are displayed, you cannot receive any more SMS messages. Delete unnecessary mail, read unread mail, or release protection. (Read and unprotected messages are automatically deleted from the oldest one.)

● You cannot use this function to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F. Use "Check new messages" to receive i-mode mail or Messages R/F.

<SMS Settings>
Setting SMS

SMS Report Request

You can set whether to request an SMS report for when sending an SMS message.
The SMS report lets you know that your SMS message was delivered to the destination.
You can check received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder.

1 ✉️▶**SMS settings**▶**SMS report request**▶**ON or OFF**

● When you operate from the Function menu of the SMS Composition display, the setting is effective only for the SMS message you are composing.

SMS Validity Period

You can set the period that the SMS Center holds an SMS message sent but unsuccessfully delivered due to the out-of-service area, etc.

1 ✉️▶**SMS settings**▶**SMS validity period**
▶**Select a holding period.**

● If you select "None", the stored SMS message is re-sent after a certain period of time and deleted from the SMS Center.
● When you operate from the Function menu of the SMS Composition display, the setting is effective only for the SMS message you are composing.

SMS Input Character

You can set the characters you can enter into the text of SMS messages. You can set to enter only half-pitch alphanumeric characters and half-pitch symbols.

1 ✉️▶**SMS settings**▶**SMS input character**▶**Select an item.**

Japanese (70char.) . . . You can enter full-pitch and half-pitch characters. You cannot enter pictograms except "●" and "⬛" (see page 496). You can enter up to 70 characters for the text.

English (160char.) . . . . You can enter only half-pitch alphanumeric characters and half-pitch symbols. You can enter up to 160 characters for the text.

● When you operate from the Function menu of the SMS Composition display, the setting is effective only for the SMS message you are composing.

SMS Center Selection

※**Normally, you do not need to change this setting.**

You can set the address and "Type of number" for the SMS Center. This setting is for getting any service other than SMS Service you currently use.

1 ✉️▶**SMS settings**▶**SMS center selection**
▶**User setting**▶**Enter an address**
▶**International or Unknown**

● You can enter up to 20 half-pitch characters for the address. However, if "#" or "✳" is included, you cannot set it for "International".
● You can reset User Setting to "DOCOMO" by Reset▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES.

<Web Mail>
Using Web Mail

You can send mail messages or browse received mail messages on the i-mode site.

● You can use only in B Mode or Dual Mode of 2in1.
● For details on Web mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".

1 ✉️▶**Web mail**
▶**Operate following the instructions on the display.**

Mail

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel/i-concier

i-mode

i-mode is the service that makes use of the display of the FOMA terminal supporting i-mode (i-mode phone) to enable you to use online services such as site (program) access, Internet access, and i-mode mail.
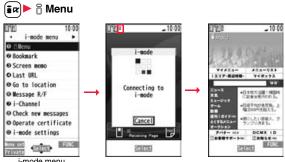
- ●i-mode is a pay service that is available on a subscription basis.
- ●For details on i-mode, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

■**Before Using i-mode**

- ●Contents of sites (programs) and web pages (Internet web pages) are generally protected by copyrights law. Data such as text and images that you obtained to the i-mode phone from sites (programs) and Internet web pages can be used for personal entertainment but cannot be used in whole or in part, as it is or after modification, for commercial purposes or sent as e-mail attachments or output from your i-mode phone to other devices, unless you have permission from the copyright holders.
- ●If you replace the UIM with another one or turn on the power with the UIM not inserted, you cannot display/play back files depending on the model, such as still images/movies/melodies obtained from sites, attached files (still images/movies/melodies and other files) sent/received by mail, screen memos, or Messages R/F.
- ●When the file whose display and/or playback is restricted by the UIM is set for the Stand-by display or specified ring tone, the FOMA terminal works with the default contents when you replace the existing UIM with new one or turn on the power with the UIM not inserted.

Accessing Sites

You can use a variety of services offered by IPs (Information Providers). From the display of the FOMA terminal, you can check your bank balance, reserve tickets, and do similar tasks. (IPs offer different types of services. Some of them need to be applied for separately.)

1 　ⓘ▶ⓘ **Menu**

i-mode menu

While you are online, "⇕" blinks.

- ●"ⓘ" blinks while you are using the i-mode service (during i-mode standby).
- ●To cancel during the connection, select "Cancel". To cancel while obtaining a page, press ⓜ(Quit).
- ●To end i-mode, press ⌒ and select "YES" while the site is displayed. "ⓘ" goes off and i-mode ends. It may take longer to end i-mode.

2 Select an item (link).

Repeat selecting items (links) to display the desired site.

- ●You can select underscored items on the displayed site. When you select an item, it is highlighted.
- ●If there is a number at the head of the item showing the link, you can connect to that link directly by pressing the numeric key corresponding to that number. (Some sites cannot be connected.)
- ●While the site is displayed, press ⊙ to scroll through line by line. Press
ⓜ(Page ▲)/ⓒ(Page ▼) or ▲/▼ to scroll through page by page.

To obtain an SSL site (SSL page)

The display for establishing authentication appears. When obtaining is completed, the SSL page appears and " 🔒 " lights.

● To cancel during authentication, select "Cancel". To cancel obtaining the SSL page after authentication, press ⌧ (Quit).

To return to a non-SSL site

The confirmation display appears asking whether to close the SSL page. Select "YES" to display an ordinary site; " 🔒 " goes off.

Change to 🅂 Menu in English

The 🅂 Menu can be displayed in English.

1 ⟨🔳⟩▶ 🅂 Menu▶English

🅂 Menu in English will be displayed.
● To change back to the Japanese display, select "日本語 (Japanese)".

Viewing and Operating Sites

Basic operating methods while a site is displayed are explained.

Return to Obtained Previous Page/Go to Obtained Next Page
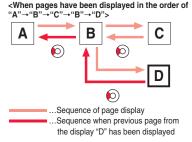
The FOMA terminal saves the files such as the displayed Internet web pages to a temporal storage area called a cache. By pressing ⟨◯⟩, you can show the page stored in the cache without communicating.

● When you show a page that exceeds the cache size of the FOMA terminal or a page configured (created) to always read its latest information, the FOMA terminal starts communication.
● When i-mode ends, the cache is cleared.

1 Press ⟨◯⟩ to return to the previous page.
Press ⟨◯⟩ to go to the next page.

To turn pages

You can move back up through the pages that you have displayed so far by pressing ⟨◯⟩ repeatedly. However, if you display a different page ("D") from the previous page ("B"), you cannot return to "C" from "D" even when you press ⟨◯⟩ twice. Instead, the pages are displayed in the order of "D" → "B" → "A".

<When pages have been displayed in the order of "A"→"B"→"C"→"B"→"D">

——— …Sequence of page display
——— …Sequence when previous page from the display "D" has been displayed

Information

- ●When you display a page stored in cache, you cannot display text or settings you entered when connected before.
- ●When Flash movies are displayed, the site behavior might differ from the one for ordinary sites.

Select/Enter Information on Sites

In sites, you may use the displayed radio buttons, check boxes, text boxes, and pull down menus.

Name	Display example	Operation/Explanation
Radio button	◯ : Not selected ◉ : Selected	Radio buttons are for selecting one from multiple choices.
Check box	☐ : Not selected ☑ : Selected	Check boxes are for selecting one or more items from multiple choices.
Text box	乗換駅から 下車駅へ 0. 検索	You can enter characters. Highlight a text box and press ◉(Select) to show the Character Entry display.
Pull down menu	東京 0. 検索 ↓ 東京 神奈川 千葉 埼玉 群馬 茨城 静岡	You can select an item from the option list. Highlight a pull-down menu and press ◉(Select) to show the option list. ●You might be able to select multiple items from pull-down menus. Each time you use ◯ to highlight an item and press ◉(Select), you can select/release items repeatedly. After selecting items, press ☐(Finish).

Information

- ●Depending on the site, the display authenticating your user ID or password might appear.
  Enter your user ID and password, and then select "OK".

Flash Function

Flash is an animation technology using pictures and sound. Flash movies make the sites more attractive. You can download Flash movies to your FOMA terminal and play them back or set them for the Stand-by display.

Information

- ●The maximum display size of the Flash movies on the site is 480 x 700 dots. If a Flash movie is larger than 480 x 700 dots, it is displayed shrunk with a proportional ratio retained.
- ●Some Flash movies refer to the phone-information data in your FOMA terminal. To permit the use of the information in your FOMA terminal, set "Use phone information" to "YES". ("YES" is set at purchase.)
- ●Effect tones sound for some Flash movies. To mute them, set "Sound effect setting" (or "Sound effect") to "OFF".
- ●The effect tone and vibrator for the Flash movie set for the Stand-by display do not work.
- ●The effect tone for Flash movies does not sound during Play Background.
- ●Some Flash movies may vibrate the FOMA terminal while they are being played back. The FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the setting of "Vibrator".
- ●When you play back a Flash movie after saving to Data Box, microSD card, or Screen Memo, it might look different depending on the saving location.
- ●Some Flash movies might not work correctly.
- ●You cannot save the Flash movies if an error occurs while they are being played back.
- ●You can operate some Flash movies by using ◎ or ◉. Flash movies can be operated sometimes even when "‹ ˆ ˇ ›" is not displayed.
- ●When Flash movies are displayed, the behavior might differ from ordinary sites.

Phone/Terminal and UIM ID

When you select an item, the confirmation display might appear asking whether to send the Phone/Terminal and UIM ID.

- ●The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" to be sent is used by the IP (Information Providers) for identifying the user, providing customized information, and judging if the contents the IP (Information Provider) offers are available on the user's mobile phone.
- ●The "Phone/Terminal and UIM ID" is sent to the IP (Information Provider) over the Internet, so could be deciphered by third parties. However, your phone number, address, age, and gender are not notified to the IPs (Information Providers) or others, by this operation.

Function Menu while Site is Displayed

🗒 **Menu**	You can return to " 🗒 Menu".	
Bookmark		
	Bookmark	Go to step 1 of "Display Web Pages or Sites from a Bookmark" on page 196.
	Add bookmark	See page 196.
Screen memo		
	Screen memo list	Go to step 2 on page 198.
	Add screen memo	See page 197.
Go to location		
	Enter URL	You can enter a URL to display an Internet web page. ▶**Select the text box.** Go to step 2 of "Displaying Internet Web Pages" on page 195. ●The URL of the displayed site is input beforehand.
	Switch to FB	See page 218.

Reload	The site contents will be updated with the latest information.	
Save image	See page 199.	
Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the URL/image of a displayed site/screen memo pasted or attached. ▶**Select an item.** **Attach URL** . . . . .Pastes a URL to the text of an i-mode mail message. **Attach image**. . . . . . .Select an image to attach it to an i-mode mail message. **Insert dec. mail** . . . . .Select an image to paste it to a Deco-mail message. Go to step 2 on page 142. ●See page 146 for Deco-mail.	
Add to phonebook	See page 92.	
Add desktop icon	See page 31.	
Others		
	Change CHR code	When characters are not correctly displayed, you can convert them to the correct ones. ●This setting is valid only for the site and Internet web page being displayed.
	Title	You can display the title of the displayed site.
	URL	You can display the URL of the displayed site.
	Certificate	You can check the subject name, author, validity period and serial number of the certificate used in SSL communication. Up to five certificates are displayed.
	Set image display	See page 204.
	Sound effect	See page 204.
	Retry	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning. ●When a part of the Flash movie is outside the display area, the Flash movie might not be played back.

Information

<Compose message>

●The number of characters of the URL you can paste to the text is up to 256 half-pitch characters. If the URL contains 256 half-pitch characters or more, you cannot paste it.

●You may not be able to attach or paste some images to i-mode mail.

<Change CHR code>

●When characters are not correctly displayed, repeat the operation. However, the previous character is displayed if you repeat the operation four times.

●Even when you repeat this operation, the correct character might not appear.

●If you change the character code when the correct characters are displayed, wrong characters might appear instead.

<Title>

●Up to 128 half-pitch/64 full-pitch characters can be displayed for a title.

<Last URL>
Displaying Most Recently Accessed Site

Display Last URL

When you end i-mode, the URL of the page displayed last is stored as "Last URL".
You can display the page you viewed last time by selecting "Last URL" from the i-mode menu.

1 (ⓘ)▶**Last URL**

Information

●Some pages cannot be stored as "Last URL", such as pages whose URLs contain more than 2,048 half-pitch characters, the data acquisition completion display for melodies or i-motion movies, etc. and FirstPass Center pages.

Reset Last URL

You can initialize the URL of the page you viewed last time to the 🅑 Menu URL.

1 (ⓘ)▶**i-mode settings**▶**Reset last URL**▶**YES**

<My Menu>
Using My Menu

If you register frequently used sites in My Menu, you will be able to access them easily.
You can register up to 45 sites.

Register Sites in My Menu

1 Call up a page to be registered▶**Register My Menu**

●The page configuration differs depending on the site.

2 Select the i-mode password text box
▶Enter the i-mode password▶**決定 (OK)**

●The entered i-mode password is displayed as "＊".
●See page 122 for the i-mode password.

Information

●Some sites cannot be registered in My Menu.

●When you subscribe to a pay site in Menu list, it will be registered in My Menu automatically.

Access Sites from My Menu

1 (ⓘ)▶ 🅑 **Menu**▶**English**▶**My Menu**
▶Select a site to be accessed.

Information

- If you are using Dual Network Service, you might not be able to use My Menu registered by the mova phone using the FOMA terminal, or My Menu registered by the FOMA terminal using the mova phone.

＜Change i-mode Password＞

Changing i-mode Password

The i-mode password (four digits) is required to subscribe to and unsubscribe from message services and i-mode pay sites, and to do i-mode mail settings.

Be sure not to let others know your i-mode password.

1 **｛i α｝**▶**⊗ Menu**▶**English**▶**Options**
▶**Change i-mode Password**
▶**Select the "Current Password" text box**
▶**Enter the i-mode password (four digits).**

- If you enter the i-mode password for the first time, enter "0000" (four zeros) which is set at a time of your contract.
- The entered numeral is displayed as "＊".

2 **Select the "New Password" text box**
▶**Enter a new i-mode password (four digits).**

- Enter your own i-mode password.

3 **Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" text box**
▶**Enter the new i-mode password (four digits)**▶**Select**

- Enter the same number that you entered in step 2.

Information

- Note that if you do not remember the i-mode password, you need to bring an identification card such as your driver's license to the handling counter of a docomo shop.

＜Enter URL＞

Displaying Internet Web Pages

1 **｛i α｝**▶**Go to location**▶**＜NEW＞**

2 **Enter a URL**▶**OK**

- You can enter up to 256 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols (up to 512 half-pitch characters for Full Browser).
- For Full Browser, the confirmation display appears telling that the web page might not be displayed.

Information

- For i-mode, Internet web pages not supporting i-mode or some type of internet web pages to be connected might not be displayed correctly.
- When the file size of the page you have received exceeds the maximum obtainable size of a page, receiving is suspended. The data obtained so far might be displayable by selecting "OK".

Displaying Web Pages from URL History

Up to 10 entered URLs can be stored in URL History.

1 **｛i α｝**▶**Go to location**
▶**Select a URL to be displayed**▶**OK**

- Excluding "http://" and "https://", up to 22 half-pitch characters can be displayed.
- You can edit the URL by selecting the URL's text box.

```
Enter URL
☆<NEW>
1/ΔΔΔ ne.jp
2 000.ne.jp
3 000Δ.ne.jp
4 ΔΔΔΔ.ne.jp
```
URL History list

Information

- When the entered URLs exceed 10 items, the URL histories are overwritten automatically, starting from the oldest one.
- When you newly enter a URL to access a site, that URL is saved as a different record even if you access the same URL.

Function Menu of the URL History List

Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the highlighted URL pasted to the text. Go to step 2 on page 142. ●You can compose it also by pressing [✉](✉).
Add desktop icon	See page 31.
Set as home URL	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶YES ●You can operate this only from the URL History list of Full Browser.

Delete		
	Delete (Delete this)	▶YES
	Delete selected	▶Put a check mark for URL histories to be deleted ▶[✉](Finish)▶YES
	Delete all	▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

<Bookmark>
Saving Web Pages or Sites for Quick Access

Add Bookmark

Once you bookmark a frequently accessed site, you can display the page directly. You can register 300 bookmarks each for i-mode and Full Browser.

1 **From the page to be registered▶[ɪα](FUNC)**
▶Bookmark▶Add bookmark▶YES
▶Select a destination folder.

Information
●When the number of characters used for a URL exceeds 256 half-pitch characters (512 half-pitch characters for Full Browser), you cannot store it.
●Up to 12 full-pitch/24 half-pitch characters are stored for a title. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted. If no title is entered, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered.
●Some pages cannot be bookmarked.

Display Web Pages or Sites from a Bookmark

1 **[ɪα]▶Bookmark▶Select a folder**
▶Select a bookmark to be displayed.

Bookmark Folder list   Bookmark list

Function Menu of the Bookmark Folder List

Operate folder		
	Add folder	You can add a new folder. You can add up to nine folders in addition to each "Bookmark" folder/"Screen memo" folder. ▶Enter a folder name. ●You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
	Edit folder name	▶Edit the folder name. ●You can enter up to 10 full-pitch/20 half-pitch characters.
	Delete folder	You can delete the folder and all bookmarks and screen memos in the folder. You cannot delete the "Bookmark" folder/"Screen memo" folder. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

Ir/🔳 transmission		
	Send all Ir data	See page 385.

All 🔟 transmission	See page 387.
No. of bookmarks	You can check the number of bookmarks stored in all folders.
Delete all	The folders are not deleted. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

Function Menu of the Bookmark List

Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message with the highlighted URL pasted to the text. Go to step 2 on page 142. ●You can compose it also by pressing 🖂(📧).
Attach to mail	You can send an i-mode mail message with the bookmark attached. Go to step 2 on page 142.
Move	You can move bookmarks or screen memos to another folder. ▶**Select a destination folder**▶**Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be moved**▶🖂(**Finish**) ▶**YES**
Edit title	▶**Edit the title.** ●You can edit the title also by pressing [MENU](**Edit**) from the list. ●You can enter up to 12 full-pitch/24 half-pitch characters for a bookmark. If you press ●(**Set**) with a blank, the URL without "http://" or "https://" is registered. ●You can enter up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters for a screen memo. If you press ●(**Set**) with a blank, the screen memo is registered as "No title".
Copy	
Copy URL	You can copy the URL of the bookmark. ▶**Select a start point for copying** ▶**Select an end point for copying.** ●See page 436 for how to paste copied characters.
Copy to microSD	See page 370.

Set as home URL	You can store the site as Home URL of Full Browser. ▶**YES** ●You can operate this only from the Bookmark list of Full Browser.
Add desktop icon	See page 31.
Ir/ 🔟 transmission	
Send Ir data	See page 384.
🔟 **transmission**	See page 387.
No. of bookmarks	You can display the number of bookmarks stored in the displayed folder.
Delete	
Delete (Delete this)	▶**YES**
Delete selected	▶**Put a check mark for bookmarks or screen memos to be deleted**▶🖂(**Finish**)▶**YES**
Delete all	You can delete all bookmarks or screen memos stored in the folder. ▶**Enter your Terminal Security Code**▶**YES**

<Screen Memo>
Saving Site Contents

Save as a Screen Memo

You can save a displayed page as a screen memo to the FOMA terminal. You can display the page saved as a screen memo without connecting to i-mode.

You can save up to 300 screen memos, however, the number of screen memos you can save decreases depending on the data volume.

1 **From a page to be saved**▶(｜FUNC｜)▶**Screen memo**
▶**Add screen memo**▶**YES**▶**Select a destination folder.**

●See page 201 when screen memos are stored to the maximum.

- Up to 11 full-pitch/22 half-pitch characters are stored for a title. For longer titles, the excess characters are deleted.
- If you save the data acquisition completion display, its data file is saved as well. (You cannot save the data acquisition completion display for Chaku-uta Full® music files, for i-motion movies with playable deadline, or for the ToruCa files whose output from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.) Some data acquisition completion displays cannot be saved as screen memos. The display except the data acquisition completion display is saved with a URL of that page of up to 256 half-pitch characters.
- When you save SSL pages, their SSL certificates are saved as well.
- The contents entered in the text box, or selected with the pull-down menu, check box, or radio button are not saved to screen memos.
- You can save up to 100 Kbytes per page. However, you can save up to 1,024 Kbytes for the schedule acquisition completion display, up to 500 Kbytes for the i-motion acquisition completion display, up to 200 Kbytes for the Deco-mail Template acquisition completion display, up to 20 Kbytes for the Download Dictionary acquisition completion display, and up to 1 Kbyte for the ToruCa acquisition completion display.

Display a Screen Memo

1 📧▶**Screen memo**

ScreenMemo folder
1 📁Screen memo

Screen Memo
Folder list

2 Select a folder▶Select a screen memo.

- Use 🔵 to check other screen memos.

Screen memo
1 Mobile Page
2 釣り情報
3 レストラン案内
4 交通情報

Screen Memo list

《《Mobile Page》》
◆新着情報
速報
サービス
トピックス

Detailed Screen
Memo display

Information

- The page saved as a screen memo has the information at the time it was saved. This might differ from the latest information on the site.

Function Menu of the Screen Memo Folder List

Operate folder	
Add folder	See page 196.
Edit folder name	See page 196.
Delete folder	See page 196.
Security ON/OFF	You can set the folder to open only when you enter your Terminal Security Code. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES The folder changes to " 📁 ". ●To release it, perform the same operation.
No. of memos	You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in all folders.
Delete all	You can delete all screen memos. The folders will not be deleted. ▶Enter your Terminal Security Code▶YES

Function Menu of the Screen Memo List

Move	See page 197.
Edit title	See page 197.
Protect ON/OFF	You can protect screen memos not to be deleted. You can protect up to 150 screen memos, however, the number of screen memos you can protect decreases depending on the data volume. Protected items are indicated by " 📁 ". ●To release protection, perform the same operation.
No. of memos	You can display the number of stored screen memos and protected screen memos in the displayed folder.
Delete	
Delete	See page 197.
Delete selected	See page 197.
Delete all	See page 197.

Function Menu of the Detailed Screen Memo Display

Compose message	You can compose an i-mode mail message also by pressing [✉](◻◻◻). (See page 193)
Edit title	See page 197.
Protect ON/OFF	See page 198.
Save image	See page 199.
Add to phonebook	See page 92.
Others	
URL	You can display the URL of the screen memo.
Certificate	See page 193.
Sound effect	See page 204.
Retry	You can play back the animation or Flash movie from the beginning. ● When a part of the Flash movie is outside the display area, the Flash movie might not be played back.
Delete	▶YES

<Save Image>
Saving Images from Sites

You can save the image displayed on a site or screen memo, and then set it for the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, or another display.
You can save images, frames and marks for Deco-mail as well. You can save up to 3,500 files in total sharing the memory space with other data files, however, the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 535)

1 From a site display/Detailed Screen Memo display ▶[i∝](◻FUNC◻)▶Save image▶Select an item.

Save one image . . . . . . You can save an image. Select an image to be saved.
Save some images . . . You can save multiple images. Select multiple images to be saved and press [✉](◻Save◻).
Save all images . . . . . . You can save storable images at a time from among the ones displayed on a site.
Save BG image. . . . . . . You can save the image displayed as a background.

2 YES▶Select a destination folder.

● For "Save some images" and "Save all images", select "Phone" or "microSD". When you select "Phone", Deco-mail pictograms are saved to the "Deco-mail pictograms" folder, frames are saved to the "Frame" folder, marks are saved to the "Stamp" folder, and others are save to the "i-mode" folder. See page 372 for the storage location for when you select "microSD".
● See page 201 when images are stored to the maximum.

3 When the confirmation display appears asking whether to set it as a display, select "YES".

Go to "Set display" on page 345.

Information

- ●Up to 36 half-pitch characters are saved for a file name. When the file name is not specified, a part of the downloaded URL or "imageXXX" (XXX denotes numerals) is saved as the file name.
- ●Even when an image is displayed on the site, it might not be displayed on the Picture viewer after saving it to the FOMA terminal.
- ●The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a Deco-mail pictogram:
  · GIF or JPEG image   · Image of 20 x 20 dots
  · Image without file restrictions   · Image of 6 Kbytes or less
- ●The image satisfying the following conditions is saved as a frame or stamp:
  · Transparent GIF (except animation GIF)   · The extension is "ifm".
  · Image of Stand-by (480 x 854) or smaller
    Images of Stand-by (480 x 854), VGA (480 x 640), CIF (288 x 352),
    QVGA (240 x 320), QCIF (144 x 176), and Sub-QCIF (96 x 128) are saved as
    frames, and other images are saved as stamps.
- ●You can save up to 100 Kbytes per image via i-mode, or 500 Kbytes per image via Full Browser.
- ●When you save multiple images or all images at one time, the background image cannot be saved.
- ●For Full Browser, you cannot save some images. You can save images in BMP format and PNG format only to the microSD card.

<Download>
Downloading Data from Sites

You can download data files from sites and save them to the FOMA terminal. You can save some files directly to the microSD card. You can save melodies, PDF files, Chara-den images, Machi-chara images, Kisekae Tool files, ToruCa files, templates, dictionaries, schedule events and others.

■The maximum downloadable size

Categories	Maximum size	Maximum number of storable
Melody	100 Kbytes	3,500 max.※1
PDF file	2 Mbytes	3,500 max.※1
Chara-den image	100 Kbytes	3
Machi-chara image	2 Mbytes	3,500 max.※1
Kisekae Tool file	2,078 Kbytes	3,500 max.※1
ToruCa file	100 Kbytes	495 max.※1
Template (Deco-mail)	100 Kbytes	100 max.※2
Template (Decome-Anime)	100 Kbytes	100 max.※2
Dictionary	20 Kbytes	10
Schedule event	1 Mbyte	2,500

※1 The memory space is shared with other data files, and the number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume. (See page 535)

※2 The number of files you can save decreases depending on the data volume.

1 **Call up a data downloadable site▶Select a data file.**

Downloading of the data file starts. When downloading is completed, the data acquisition completion display appears.

- ●For a PDF file, the PDF file is displayed when downloading is completed.
- ●For the PDF file that cannot be displayed unless you download all pages, the confirmation display appears asking whether to download all pages. Select "YES" to select the destination folder.
- ●For the PDF file of which you have not downloaded all the pages, you can additionally download the remaining pages by "Download remain".
- ●See page 392 for how to save the displayed PDF file to the FOMA terminal. You can save the PDF file containing pages that have not been downloaded or the PDF file of which download was suspended midway as well.
- ●The password entry display might be displayed depending on the PDF file. Enter the password, and then select "OK".
- ●See page 389 for operations while PDF file is displayed.

2 Save▶YES▶Select a destination folder.

Chara-den images, templates (Deco-mail), and schedule events are saved to the FOMA terminal.
Select "Phone" or "microSD" for Machi-chara images, Kisekae Tool files, and templates (Decome-Anime).
For dictionaries, select "<Not stored>".
●Select "Property" to display the information.
●See page 201 when data files are stored to the maximum.
●See page 197 to save a screen memo.

3 Select "YES" to set the downloaded data file to each function.

●Select an incoming type when you set a melody as a ring tone.
●See page 146 or page 149 for using a template to create Deco-mail or Decome-Anime messages.

Information
●Some downloaded melodies might not be played back successfully.

When downloading a Kisekae Tool file or Machi-chara image is suspended

When you press [⊠](Quit) to suspend downloading or when downloading is suspended by an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading.
Select "YES" to resume downloading the remaining part. Select "NO" to show the data acquisition completion display. You can save the downloaded part by selecting "Save pt." from the data acquisition completion display. When you select "Save pt.", you can save it only to "Phone".
You can re-download the rest of the partially saved file from "Kisekae Tool" or "Machi-chara" in "Data box".

Search by i-mode

You can look for your favorite files on the site and download them. The number of files you can save differs depending on the file you download. You cannot change the site.

1 Each selection display▶Search by i-mode▶YES ▶Select a file.

●The way of downloading differs depending on the file.
●Select "To i-schedule list" on the i-schedule list.

Information
●You are separately charged a packet communication fee.

When the data files are stored to the maximum

If the maximum number of data files is stored or there is not enough memory when you try to save the data files, the confirmation display appears asking whether to delete the unnecessary file and save new one.
●Perform this operation to save the following data:

· Images	· i-motion movies	· Melodies
· Chara-den images	· Machi-chara images	· Programs
· Chaku-uta Full® music files	· PDF files	· i-αppli programs
· ToruCa files	· Templates	· Screen memos
· Kisekae Tool files	· Schedule events	

1. YES▶Put a check mark for data files to be deleted▶[⊠](Finish)▶YES
As the data files except Chara-den images, templates, screen memos, and schedule events are stored in the same storage area, you can select other files when deleting files. Select a folder and put a check mark for the files to be deleted. "＊" appears on the folder which contains the checked files.
" Finish " appears when you put it for the files whose amount of data is equal to memory shortage.
●You can put or clear check marks at a time by pressing [i☆](FUNC) and selecting "Select all in page/Release in page".
●Each time you press [↗] or [i☆](Memory), or each time you press [i☆](FUNC) and select "Change disp. mode", you can switch display/nondisplay of the folder volume and data volume.
●When selecting a file in "MUSIC", you can show the lower level folders by pressing [⊠](　).
●Each time you press [CLR], the upper level folder returns.
●For programs, you need to delete many files when deleting other files because the data volume per program is large.
●If the maximum number of programs are stored when you execute "Move program" or try to save an i-αppli program or ToruCa file, you need to delete at least one file which belongs to the same type.
●If there is a security-applied folder for screen memos, the confirmation display appears asking whether to enable you to select screen memos in that security-applied folder. When you select "YES", you need to enter your Terminal Security Code.
●The file set for another function is indicated by "★".
●See page 294 for deleting mail-linked i-αppli.
●If you operate this when moving an i-αppli program from the microSD card to the FOMA terminal, you cannot delete the i-αppli program with its data file on the IC card.

About "P-SQUARE"

You can download the pre-installed Chara-den images, Machi-chara images, Kisekae Tool files, templates, dictionaries, and Deco-mail pictograms from the "P-SQUARE" site (in Japanese only).
卵Menu → メニューリスト (Menu List) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile Phone Maker) → P-SQUARE

QR code for
accessing the site

Uploading Files to Sites

You can upload JPEG or GIF images and i-motion movies stored in the FOMA terminal to a site.

1 Call up a file uploadable site▶参照 (Reference)
 ▶Picture or 卵motion▶Select a file to be uploaded.

≥Procedure for uploading files differs depending on the site.

Information

≥You can upload up to 2 Mbytes in total.
≥You cannot upload files that are prohibited from output from the FOMA terminal to other devices.

Operations from Highlighted Information

You can easily make a call, send mail, display Internet web pages, start 1Seg, set TV Timer/Timer Recording using highlighted information (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, and so on) displayed on sites and in mail.

≥The Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, i-αppli To, Media To and Address Link functions might not be available depending on the mail sent from a personal computer or the site.
≥You might be able to use the Web To, Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, or i-αppli To function using highlighted information other than a phone number, mail address or URL.
≥In B Mode of 2in1, the Mail To function is not available.
≥The information is not highlighted in the Decome-Anime.

Phone To/AV Phone To Function

You can make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls by using phone numbers or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.
≥The Phone To function to make a videophone call is called the AV Phone To function.

1 Select a phone number or similar information
 ▶Select a dialing type.

≥When you select "Select image", select an image to be sent to other party during a videophone call.
≥Select "SMS" to compose an SMS message to send to the phone number set as the destination address. Go to step 3 on page 186.
≥The choices for dialing types may not be displayed when the phone number is prefixed by "tel:" or "tel-av:". Go to step 2.

2 Dial

≥To make an international call, select "Int'l dial assist". (See page 59)
≥To set Caller ID Notification, select "Notify caller ID". (See step 2 of "Set Caller ID Notification when Making a Call" on page 56)

Mail To Function

You can send mail by using mail addresses or similar information displayed on sites and in mail.

1 Select a mail address or similar information.

The destination mail address is already entered in the address field.
Go to step 3 on page 142.

Web To Function

You can access Internet web pages, via i-mode or Full Browser, from URL or similar information displayed on sites or in mail.

1 Select a URL or similar information
▶i-mode or Full Browser▶YES

- ≥When the URL or similar one contains the information of i-mode or Full Browser, you are connected via the function which corresponds to the information.
- ≥To cancel during connection, select "Cancel". To cancel while obtaining a page, press ⌑(Quit).

i-αppli To Function

You can start i-αppli programs from URLs (links) displayed on sites and in mail.

1 Select i-αppli information▶YES

i-αppli starts.

Information

- ≥Even if i-mode mail text contains a link to start an i-αppli program, you cannot quote the link when forwarding or replying to. Also, you cannot quote it when using DOCOMO keitai datalink or infrared communication function.

Media To Function

You can start 1Seg or set TV Timer/Timer Recording from the information (links) displayed on sites and in mail.

1 Select 1Seg information▶YES

1Seg or TV Timer/Timer Recording starts.

- ≥When the timer function starts, press ⌑(Finish) to set TV Timer/Timer Recording.
  To change contents you want to set, go to step 1 of "TV Timer List" on page 261 or step 1 on page 262.

Information

- ≥You may not be able to use the Media To function even if information is highlighted.

Address Link Function

You can display a map from the postal address shown on a site or others or can use the location information on the GPS compatible i-αppli program. You can send the location information by i-mode mail as well.

1 Select the location information such as postal address
▶Select an item.

Read map . . . . Starts a GPS compatible i-αppli program set by "Select map" of "GPS settings". Select "YES" to send the location information.
Map/GPS αppli . . . Selects and starts a GPS compatible i-αppli program.
Paste to mail . . . . . Converts the location information into a URL and composes an i-mode mail message with the URL pasted to the text.
Check loc. info . . . . Displays the details of the selected location information.

<i-mode Settings>
Setting i-mode

1 **[iα]**▶**i-mode settings**▶**Do the following operations.**

Scroll	You can set the number of lines that are scrolled for when you use ⊙ while displaying a site or screen memo. ▶**Select the number of lines.**
Font size	See "i-mode" on page 119.
Set image display	You can set whether to display images or Flash movies included on sites or in screen memos. ▶**ON or OFF**
Set connection timeout	See page 204.
Host selection	See page 205.
Automatic replay set.	See page 210.
Use phone information	To display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed, the information in the FOMA terminal may be used. You can select whether to permit the information to be used for that case. ▶**YES or NO**
Sound effect setting	You can set whether to make an effect tone sound for when you display a Flash movie while a site or screen memo is displayed. ▶**ON or OFF**
Information disp. set.	See page 213.
Doc. display settings	See page 392.
i-mode arrival act	See page 86.
Reset last URL	See page 194.
Check settings	You can check each of "i-mode settings".

Information

<Set image display>

≥Even when "ON" is set, images might not be displayed correctly. In this case, " " is displayed.
≥When "OFF" is set, " " is displayed and the data file is not received.
≥If you change this setting, "Set image display" of "User settings" of "1Seg" is also changed.

<Use phone information>

≥The available information is as follows:
　・ Date and time set by "Set time"
　・ Reception level of radio waves
　・ Battery level
　・ Sound volume set by "Phone" of "Ring volume"
　・ Language selected by "Select language"
　・ Model name and serial number of FOMA terminal

<Sound effect setting>

≥Even when "ON" is set, the effect tones may not sound depending on Flash movies.

<Set Connection Timeout>
Setting Connection Timeout

It may take long to obtain some sites. You can set the time to wait before canceling obtaining. Obtaining is not canceled automatically when "Unlimited" is set.

1 **[iα]**▶**i-mode settings**▶**Set connection timeout**
▶**Select a timeout value.**

Information

≥Even when you have set "Unlimited", you may be disconnected owing to radio wave conditions.

Changing a Host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

※**Normally, you do not need to change this setting.**

You can set the host (APN) to use for receiving services other than i-mode (DOCOMO).

If you change this setting, you will not be able to use i-mode.

1 **i-mode settings▶Host selection**
　▶Highlight <Not recorded> and press 　(Edit)
　▶Enter your Terminal Security Code.

● If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to the selected one.
● To delete the stored host, press 　(FUNC), select "Delete", enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select "YES".

2 **Do the following operations.**

Host name	**▶Enter a host name.** ● You can enter up to 9 full-pitch/18 half-pitch characters.
Host number	**▶Enter a host number.** ● You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	**▶Enter a host address.** ● You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address 2	**▶Enter a host address 2.** ● You can enter up to 30 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

3 **Press 　(Finish).**

Information

● Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full and Pake-hodai double are not applied when you set the host to other than i-mode.

<SSL Certificate>
Operating SSL Certificates

1 **　▶Operate certificate▶Certificate**
　▶Highlight a certificate and press 　(FUNC)
　▶Do the following operations.

Certificate info	The subject name, author, validity period, and serial number of the certificate are displayed. ● You can check the certificate also by pressing 　(Select) instead of 　(FUNC).
Valid/Invalid	The selected item is invalidated; then " 　 " changes to " 　 ". ● When you select an invalid certificate, it will be validated. ● If you set a certificate to invalid, you cannot display the sites with that SSL certificate. ● You cannot set "DOCOMO Cert 2" to "Invalid".

Certificates used for SSL communication

Certificate . . . . Certificates issued by the authenticating company and stored in the FOMA terminal at purchase.
DOCOMO Certificate . . . Certificates required for connecting to the FirstPass Center or FirstPass sites; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).
User Certificate . . . . Certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center by selecting "User certificate" from the i-mode menu; they are stored on the UIM (green/white).

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel/i-concier

Setting FirstPass

User certificates verify that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificates are stored on the UIM for the use on FirstPass sites.

When you cannot display a FirstPass site because the user certificate on the UIM has expired or the required user certificate is not stored on the UIM, you can request the issue and download the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

●You can request and download user certificates from the FirstPass Center.
●This function is not available with the blue UIM.
●The display and operating method displayed in the FirstPass Center site are subject to change.
●To show FirstPass sites, you can use Full Browser as well.
●You cannot send/receive mail or receive Messages R/F while connected to the FirstPass Center.
●Set the date and time using "Set time" beforehand to connect to the FirstPass Center.
●This function is not available overseas.

Client Authentication

●With the FOMA terminal, server authentication and client authentication are performed for safer data exchange. The site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates, check the other party's certificate and verify each other for safer communication service. By getting client authentication, you can enjoy more secure communication services.
●Client authentication is available via the Internet communication from the FOMA terminal or via the Internet communication with the FOMA terminal connected to a personal computer. To use the personal computer for the client authentication, you need to install the FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM.
For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the "FirstPassPCsoft" folder on the CD-ROM. Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or higher is recommended) is required to see "FirstPassManual" (PDF format). If it is not installed in your personal computer, install Adobe® Reader® from the provided CD-ROM to see it.
For details such as how to use it, refer to "Adobe Reader Help".

Access FirstPass Center

You can perform user certificate operations on the site of the FirstPass Center site.

1 |ⓘα|▶**Operate certificate**▶**User certificate**▶**English**

Site display for
the FirstPass Center

Information

●Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and carefully read the regulation.
●You are not charged a packet communication fee for connecting to the FirstPass Center.

Request Issue of User Certificate for Download

You need to request the issue of the user certificate before you download it. When requesting the issue of your user certificate is completed, download the user certificate. After the downloading is completed, it is saved on the UIM and the FirstPass sites will be displayable.

1 **Site display for the FirstPass Center**
▶Request your certificate▶Continue

●For an update, the message "Updating user certificate" is displayed.
●When you have already requested the issue of the user certificate, select "Download your certificate" from the site display for the FirstPass Center, go to step 3.

2 Enter your PIN2 code.

≥Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
≥See page 122 for PIN2 code.

FirstPass

Requesting a certificate is completed.
Download the certificate

Download/Menu

3 Download▶Continue

≥If you do not download the user certificate immediately, select "Menu". From the confirmation display asking whether to close the SSL page, select "YES" to return to the site display for the FirstPass Center.

Information

≥Before downloading a new or an updated certificate, be sure to request the user certificate to be issued. User certificates cannot be downloaded until the request for issue has been made.

Access Sites with User Certificate

You can connect to FirstPass sites with your user certificate.

1 Call up a FirstPass site▶Select an item▶YES

2 Enter your PIN2 code.

≥Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
≥See page 122 for PIN2 code.

Information

≥If you try to connect to the FirstPass site without the user certificate or when its available period is expired, the confirmation display appears asking whether to continue connecting to the site. Select "NO" to return to the previous page. Download or update the user certificate from the FirstPass Center site and then access the site again.
≥The packet communication fee for accessing the FirstPass site is included in Pake-hodai, Pake-hodai full or Pake-hodai double.

Request Revocation of User Certificate

You can revoke the downloaded user certificate.

1 Site display of the FirstPass Center▶Other settings ▶Revoke your certificate▶YES▶Enter your PIN2 code.

≥Enter your PIN2 code within 60 seconds. When the code is not entered within 60 seconds, the connection is cut off as an error entry.
≥See page 122 for PIN2 code.

2 Continue▶Continue▶Continue

FirstPass

For more details, refer to the usage regulation and the Certificate Policies (CP)/the Certification Practices Statement (CPS).

Continue/Menu

Information

≥To use FirstPass after revoking a certificate, you need to apply again for your user certificate to be issued and then download it.
≥See page 205 for how to view the download user certificate.

<Certificate Host>
Changing Hosts for Certificate Issue

※**Normally, you do not need to change this setting.**

You can set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1 ｉα▶Operate certificate▶Certificate host ▶Highlight <Not recorded> and press ⌨(Edit).

≥If you select a stored host, the setting is changed to that host.
≥To delete the stored host, press ｉα(FUNC), select "Delete", enter your Terminal Security Code, and then select "YES".

2 Enter your Terminal Security Code
▶Do the following operations.

Default URL	▶Enter a default URL. ●You can enter up to 100 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.
Host address	▶Enter a host address. ●You can enter up to 99 half-pitch alphanumeric characters.

3 Press ⊠([Finish]).

■Before Using FirstPass
●FirstPass is DOCOMO's electronic authentication service. By using FirstPass, client authentication is enabled, whereby the site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates, check the other party's certificate and perform mutual authentication.
●When requesting issue of a user certificate, carefully read "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" on the display, agree to this, and then make the request.
●You need to enter the PIN2 code to use the user certificate. Once you have entered your PIN2 code, all subsequent operations will be deemed to be done by you, so be careful not to let anyone else use your UIM or PIN2 code.
●If your UIM is lost or stolen, "docomo Information Center" on the back page of this manual can revoke your user certificate.
●DOCOMO bears no obligation or responsibility with regard to the sites and information provided by FirstPass sites. Please solve the problem between you and FirstPass sites.
●DOCOMO and the CA do not guarantee security when you use FirstPass and SSL, so you should use them on your own judgment and responsibility.

---

i-motion

i-motion movies are composed of video, sound and music, and you can play them back obtaining from i-motion compatible sites into your FOMA terminal. You can set the i-motion movie for a ring tone.
Two types of i-motion movies are available as shown below. The type of the obtained i-motion movie differs depending on the site or file.
You can save up to 10 Mbytes per i-motion movie.

Categories		Description
Type	Playback type	
Standard (normal) type (can be saved)	Plays back after obtaining	Plays back after obtaining all the data of an i-motion movie.
	Plays back while obtaining	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion movie. After obtaining, you can play it back in the same way as "Plays back after obtaining".
Streaming type (cannot be saved)	Plays back while obtaining	Plays back while obtaining an i-motion movie. The data is deleted after playback, so you cannot play it back again or save it to the FOMA terminal.

Downloading i-motion from Sites

Play Back i-motion Obtained from a Site

1 Select an i-motion movie from an i-motion obtainable site ▶Play

See page 352 for the operation during playback.

- If an i-motion movie is playable while being obtained, it will be played back while being obtained.
- If "Automatic replay set." is set to "ON", the i-motion movie will be played back automatically after it is obtained.
- Select "Property" to display the i-motion information. (See page 353)
- See page 197 to save a screen memo.

Information

- Depending on the accessed site or an i-motion movie, you might not be able to obtain the data or play it back during obtaining, or play it back after obtaining. Also, you cannot obtain an i-motion movie in ASF format.
- See page 352 for the file formats of playable i-motion movies.
- Even when you stop playing back the data of standard (normal) type while obtaining, obtaining still continues.
- Even if "Automatic replay set." is set to "ON", the data is not automatically played back after obtaining when it is played back while obtaining.
- For an i-motion movie that has restrictions on the number of playbacks, playable period, or playable deadline, " 🕐 " is displayed at the head of the title. An i-motion movie with the playable period restricted cannot be played back before or after the restriction period. If you remove the battery and keep it aside for a long time, the date/time information in your FOMA terminal might be reset. In that case, you cannot play back the i-motion movie that has restrictions on the playable period and playable deadline. See " ᷇ motion info" for checking the playback restrictions.

Information

- Depending on the line speed, line state, or radio wave conditions, the playback during obtaining might be suspended or the images might be distorted. You can repeatedly play back the standard (normal) type of i-motion movies after obtaining, but cannot play back the streaming type of i-motion movies.

Save i-motion

You can save the obtained i-motion movies to your FOMA terminal. You can save up to 250 Mbytes of files in total sharing the memory space with other data files. (See page 531)

1 A data acquisition completion display▶Save▶YES ▶Select a destination folder.

- See page 201 when i-motion movies are stored to the maximum.

When downloading i-motion movie is suspended

When you press 🖃(■Quit■) to suspend downloading or when downloading is suspended by an incoming call, the confirmation display appears asking whether to resume downloading.
Select "YES" to resume downloading the remaining part. Select "NO" to show the data acquisition completion display for a partially savable i-motion file. Select "Save pt." to save that file to any folder in " ᷇ motion" in "Data box".
You can re-download the rest of the partially saved file from "Data box".

- The file name of the partially saved i-motion movie is "movie".
- When the playable period or playable deadline of the partially saved i-motion movie has expired, you cannot download the remaining segments of the file. You can delete the partially saved file when you try to download the file.

Information

- Depending on the i-motion movie, you might not be able to save the obtained data to the FOMA terminal.
- Partially saved i-motion movies cannot be played back from Data Box.

<Automatic Replay Setting>
Setting Automatic Replay of i-motion

You can set whether to play back an i-motion movie automatically, for when you have obtained a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie from a site or have selected a screen memo which contains a standard (normal) type of i-motion movie.

1 **[i⍺]▶i-mode settings▶Automatic replay set.**
▶ON or OFF

Information

●Note that a streaming type of i-motion movie is played back automatically even if this function is set to "OFF".

i-Channel

This service distributes information such as news and weather forecast to i-Channel mobile phones. The automatically received latest information flows on the Stand-by display by tickers. You can read it on the i-Channel list by pressing the i-Channel key. (See page 210) Further, two types of channels, "Basic channel" provided by DOCOMO and "Favorite channel" provided by IPs (Information Providers) are available. You are not charged a packet communication fee for auto-updates of "Basic channel" information.
You are charged a packet communication fee for auto-updates of "Favorite channel" information which is enabled by registering your favorite channels. For both of "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel", note that you are separately charged a packet communication fee for browsing detailed information.
When you use the international roaming service, you are charged a packet communication fee for both auto-update and browsing detailed information.

●i-Channel is a pay service which is available on a subscription basis (You need to subscribe to i-mode to apply for i-Channel).
●For details on i-Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
●The i-Channel service is provided in Japanese only.

Information

●When the FOMA terminal is turned off or if radio wave conditions are bad such as when it is out of the service area, you may not be able to receive information even if you have contracted to the i-Channel service. In that case, select the channel for unsigned subscribers that appears by pressing (○); then you can now receive information, and tickers flow on the Stand-by display. If your FOMA terminal remains in the default state, you may not be able to receive information. Press (○), and then information is received and tickers flow on the Stand-by display.
●To receive i-Channel information overseas, you are charged a communication fee by channel (domestic talk-free service does not apply).
●After you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting is automatically set to off.
●If you cancel the contract for the i-mode service before you cancel the contract for the i-Channel service, the ticker setting remains on.

Using i-Channel

When "Ticker ON/OFF" is set to "ON", up to 10 ticker files for the latest information flow repeatedly on the Stand-by display. If you want to know more about the information, you can obtain the details from the Channel list.

1 **Press (○).**
The Channel list appears regardless of the "Ticker ON/OFF" setting.
●" ↕ " blinks during receiving information.

Channel list

2 **Select an item (link).**

Information

●The ring tone does not sound and the vibrator does not work even when information comes in. In addition, the Call/Charging indicator does not light or flicker.